

# **California Accessibility Regulations**

# **CALIFORNIA ACCESSIBILITY REGULATIONS**

**Printed  
July 1, 1999**

**COMPLETE LIST OF ACCESSIBILITY REGULATIONS  
CONTAINED IN TITLE 24  
THE CALIFORNIA CODE OF REGULATIONS**

CA Building Standards Administrative Code	Part 1
CA Building Code	Part 2
CA Electrical Code	Part 3
CA Plumbing Code	Part 5
CA Historical Building Code	Part 8
CA Referenced Standards Code	Part 12

**TITLE 24**  
**CALIFORNIA**  
**CODE OF REGULATIONS**

## **INTRODUCTION**

On July 1st, 1999 the latest amendments to Part 2, Title 24, California Code of Regulations will become effective. These minimum requirements for accessibility now appear as a supplement to the 1997 Uniform Building Code, published by the International Conference of Building Officials (ICBO), and are effective 180 days after publication by ICBO on July 1<sup>st</sup>, 1999. Applications for permits submitted on or after that date, or when there is no permit, construction or alterations begun on or after that date must meet these requirements.

The regulations herein were developed by the Division of the State Architect, Access Compliance to provide a single code which would meet all of the most stringent requirements of the current California Building Code, as well as the Federal Fair Housing Amendments Act and the Americans with Disabilities Act Accessibility Guidelines. It is important to note that compliance with these regulations is intended to address building code provisions only, and that other performance obligations such as civil rights issues, employment obligations, and other non-building requirements are found elsewhere.

Most importantly, these regulations were presented in 1996 to the United States Department of Justice for their approval and their certification that these requirements meet or exceed building standards present in the Americans with Disabilities Act. Until the State Building Code is certified, compliance with these standards will not guarantee compliance with the federal guidelines. At the present time, these regulations are waiting for the certification process of federal review and approval to begin.



# **PART 1**

## **BUILDING STANDARDS ADMINISTRATIVE CODE**

<u>CHAPTER 2</u>	
DEFINITIONS .....	14 thru 29
 <u>CHAPTER 3 USE OR OCCUPANCY</u>	
301 OCCUPANCY CLASSIFIED .....	30
310 REQUIREMENTS FOR GROUP R OCCUPANCIES .....	30
311 REQUIREMENTS FOR GROUP S OCCUPANCIES .....	30
 <u>CHAPTER 10 MEANS OF EGRESS</u>	
1003 GENERAL .....	32 thru 34
 <u>CHAPTER 11A ACCESSIBILITY FOR PRIVATELY FUNDED HOUSING</u>	
1101A SCOPE .....	35
1102A DEFINITIONS .....	35
1103A BUILDING ACCESSIBILITY .....	40
1104A GROUP M OCCUPANCIES .....	40
1105A GROUP R OCCUPANCIES .....	40
1106A DOOR SIGNAL DEVICES .....	40
1107A DESIGN AND CONSTRUCTION .....	40
1108A EGRESS AND AREAS OF REFUGE .....	43
1109A FACILITY ACCESSIBILITY .....	44
1110A ELEVATORS AND SPECIAL ACCESS (WHEELCHAIR) LIFTS .....	49
1111A TELEPHONES .....	49
1112A KITCHENS .....	51
1113A SWIMMING POOLS .....	52
1114A SIGNS .....	52
1115A LAUNDRY ROOMS .....	53
1116A FLOORING .....	53
1117A EXTERIOR ROUTES OF TRAVEL .....	53
1118A PARKING FACILITIES .....	55
1119A REQUIREMENTS FOR ACCESSIBLE ROUTES IN COVERED BUILDINGS WITHOUT AN ELEVATOR .....	59
1120A GENERAL ACCESSIBILITY FOR ENTRANCES, EXITS AND PATHS OF TRAVEL .....	61

**CHAPTER 11B ACCESSIBILITY TO PUBLIC BUILDINGS, PUBLIC  
ACCOMMODATIONS, COMMERCIAL BUILDINGS AND  
PUBLICLY FUNDED HOUSING**

1101B SCOPE.....	72
1102B DEFINITIONS.....	72
1103B BUILDING ACCESSIBILITY .....	74
1104B ACCESSIBILITY FOR GROUP A OCCUPANCIES .....	74
1105B ACCESSIBILITY FOR GROUP B OCCUPANCIES .....	80
1106B ACCESSIBILITY FOR GROUP E OCCUPANCIES.....	83
1107B FACTORIES AND WAREHOUSES.....	84
1108B ACCESSIBILITY FOR GROUP H OCCUPANCIES .....	85
1109B ACCESSIBILITY FOR GROUP I OCCUPANCIES.....	85
1110B ACCESS FOR GROUP M OCCUPANCIES .....	87
1111B ACCESSIBILITY FOR GROUP R OCCUPANCIES .....	91
1112B ACCESSIBILITY FOR GROUP S OCCUPANCIES.....	95
1113B ACCESSIBILITY FOR GROUP U OCCUPANCIES .....	95
1114B FACILITY ACCESSIBILITY .....	95
1115B BATHING AND TOILET FACILITIES .....	99
1116B ELEVATORS AND SPECIAL ACCESS (WHEELCHAIR) LIFTS.....	108
1117B OTHER BUILDING COMPONENTS.....	109
1118B SPACE ALLOWANCE AND REACH RANGES .....	118
1119B SPECIAL STANDARDS OF ACCESSIBILITY FOR BUILDINGS WITH HISTORICAL SIGNIFICANCE .....	119
1120B FLOORS AND LEVELS.....	119
1121B PROTRUDING OBJECTS.....	120
1122B FIXED OR BUILT-IN SEATING, TABLES, AND COUNTERS .....	120
1123B ACCESS TO EMPLOYEE AREAS .....	121
1124B GROUND AND FLOOR SURFACES .....	121
1125B STORAGE.....	122
1126B VENDING MACHINES .....	122
1127B EXTERIOR ROUTES OF TRAVEL .....	122
1128B PEDESTRIAN GRADE SEPARATIONS (OVERPASS AND UNDERPASSES).....	125
1129B ACCESSIBLE PARKING REQUIRED.....	126
1130B PARKING STRUCTURES .....	129
1131B PASSENGER DROP-OFF LOADING ZONES .....	129
1132B OUTDOOR OCCUPANCIES .....	130
1133B GENERAL.....	131
1134B ACCESSIBILITY FOR EXISTING BUILDINGS.....	144
1135B HISTORIC PRESERVATION-SPECIAL STANDARDS OF ACCESSIBILITY FOR BUILDINGS WITH HISTORICAL SIGNIFICANCE .....	147



CHAPTER 11C STANDARDS FOR CARD READERS AT GASOLINE FUEL  
DISPENSING FACILITIES

1101C CARD READER DEVICES AT FUEL DISPENSING EQUIPMENT .....	148
1102C APPLICATION .....	148
1103C NUMBER OF ACCESSIBLE CARD-READING DEVICES REQUIRED .....	149
1104C REQUIRED FEATURES .....	149
1105C PROTECTION OF DISPENSERS MOUNTED AT GRADE .....	149

CHAPTER 30 ELEVATORS, DUMBWAITERS, ESCALATORS, AND  
MOVING WALKS

3003 SPECIAL PROVISIONS .....	150
3003.4.1a GENERAL-SIZE OF CAB AND CONTROL LOCATIONS AND REQUIREMENTS .....	150
3003.4.2 OPERATION AND LEVELING .....	150
3003.4.4 DOOR SIZE .....	150
3003.4.5 DOOR PROTECTIVE AND REOPENING DEVICE .....	151
3003.4.6.1a HALL CALL .....	151
3003.4.6.2a CAR CALL .....	151
3003.4.7b CAR INSIDE .....	151
3003.4.8a CAR CONTROLS .....	152
3003.4.9b CAR POSITION INDICATOR AND SIGNAL .....	152
3003.4.13 MINIMUM ILLUMINATION .....	152
3003.4.15a HALL LANTERN .....	153
3003.4.16a DOORJAMB MARKING .....	153
3008 SPECIAL ELEVATORS .....	153

CHAPTER 35 UNIFORM BUILDING CODE STANDARDS

3505 AMENDMENTS TO NATIONAL STANDARDS .....	157
---	-----

### **PART 3 - THE CALIFORNIA ELECTRICAL CODE**

<u>ARTICLE 089</u>	
ADMINISTRATION .....	161
<u>ARTICLE 210</u>	
BRANCH CIRCUITS .....	169
<u>ARTICLE 380</u>	
SWITCHES .....	171
<u>ARTICLE 760</u>	
FIRE PROTECTIVE SIGNALING SYSTEMS .....	171

### **PART 5 - THE CALIFORNIA PLUMBING CODE**

<u>CHAPTER 1 ADMINISTRATION</u>	
101.2 PURPOSE .....	172
101.4 SCOPE .....	172
101.6 NONBUILDING REGULATIONS .....	173
101.7 ORDER OF PRECEDENCE .....	173
101.8 FORMAT .....	174
101.9 VALIDITY .....	174
101.10 STANDARD REFERENCE DOCUMENTS .....	174
101.11 APPLICATION .....	174
<u>CHAPTER 15 PLUMBING REQUIREMENTS FOR DESIGN SAFETY</u>	
FOR ACCESSIBILITY	
1501 GENERAL .....	175
1502 WATER CLOSETS .....	175
1503 URINALS .....	176
1504 LAVATORIES .....	176
1505 SHOWERS .....	177
1506 BATHTUBS .....	178
1507 DRINKING FOUNTAINS .....	178
1508 SINKS .....	180

**PART 8 - THE STATE HISTORICAL BUILDING CODE**

**CHAPTER 6** ALTERNATE ACCESSIBILITY PROVISIONS

601 PURPOSE, INTENT AND SCOPE.....	181
602 BASIC PROVISIONS.....	181
603 PREFERRED ALTERNATIVES .....	182
604 EQUIVALENT FACILITATION .....	183
605 EXCEPTIONS .....	183

**PART 12 - THE CALIFORNIA REFERENCED STANDARDS CODE**

**CHAPTER 31** BUILDING AND FACILITY ACCESS SPECIFICATIONS

12-31-102 DETECTABLE WARNINGS .....	185
-------------------------------------	-----

# **PART 1**

## **BUILDING STANDARDS ADMINISTRATIVE CODE**

## **Chapter 5**

# **ACCESS TO PUBLIC BUILDINGS BY PHYSICALLY HANDICAPPED PERSONS**

### **Article 1. Compliance Procedures**

#### **5-101. Purpose.**

*These regulations implement Sections 4450 et seq. of the Government Code to insure that where State funds are utilized for the construction or alteration of any public building or facility or where the funds of counties, municipalities, or other political subdivisions are utilized for the construction or alteration of elementary, secondary or community college buildings and facilities that the plans and specifications for such buildings and facilities are reviewed by the Office the State Architect, Office of Regulation Services (DSA/ORS) and certified to be in compliance with the "Access to Public Buildings by Physically Handicapped Persons Law" prior to a contract being awarded.*

*Authority: Government Code Sections 4450, 4453 and 4454.*

*Reference: Government Code Section 4454.*

#### **HISTORY:**

- 1. New Group 2 (§§ 81 through 86) filed 3-5-71 as an emergency; effective on filing. Certificate of Compliance included (Register 71, No. 10). For history of former Group 2 see Register 66, No. 38.*
- 2. Amendment filed 11-24- 78; designated effective 1-1-79 (Register 78, No. 47).*

#### **5-102. General.**

*For the purpose of assuring compliance with handicapped design requirements, the governmental agency controlling the appropriation from which the project is funded shall submit an application, together with plans and full, complete, and accurate specifications and filing fee, to the State Architect. The DSA/ORS will process the documents. Written approval shall be obtained prior to award of a construction contract.*

*Authority: Government, Code Section 4453.*

*Reference: Government Code Section 4454.*

**HISTORY:**

1. Amendment filed 11-24-78; designated effective 1-1-79 (Register 78, No. 47).

**5-103. Application.**

*For each project to be reviewed and certified, a separate application (Form No. ORS-1) shall be submitted to Division of the State Architect/Office of Regulation Services (DSA/ORS). The application shall be accompanied by a complete set of project plans and specifications and an appropriate filing fee (see Section 5-104).*

*The above documents shall be submitted to either of the following offices:*

**DIVISION OF THE STATE ARCHITECT**

*1139 K Street, Suite 101*

*Sacramento, California 95814*

*Attention: Access Compliance Section*

**OR**

**DIVISION OF THE STATE ARCHITECT**

*107 South Broadway, Room 3029*

*Los Angeles, California 90012*

*Attention: Access Compliance Section*

*The application shall be considered received when all the required documents and fees have been received by the office and the application number assigned.*

*The documents submitted for review and used for certification shall be retained by DSA/ORS.*

*Authority: Government Code Section 4454*

*Referenced: Government Code Section 4454.*

**HISTORY:**

1. Amendment filed 11-24-78; designated effective 1-1-79 (Register 78, No. 47). For prior history, see Register 76, No. 25.
2. Renumbering and amendment of former Section 83 to Section 83.1 filed 8-30-84; effective upon filing pursuant to Government Code Section 11346.2(d) (Register 84, No. 35).

**5-104. Fees.**

(a) *The filing fee for projects under applications received on or after September 1, 1984 shall be two-tenths of one percent (.2%) of the first \$500,000.00 of the estimated project cost plus one-tenth of one percent (.1%) of the project cost greater than \$500,000.00 up to and including \$2,000,000.00 plus one-hundredth of one percent (.01%) of the excess of the estimated project cost over \$2,000,000.00, except that the minimum fee in any case shall be \$200.00.*

*Example of filing fee to accompany application:*

<i>Estimated project cost = \$250,000.00</i>	
<i>.002 X \$250,000.00 =</i>	<i>\$ 500.00</i>
<i>Estimated project cost = \$1,500,000.00</i>	
<i>.002 X \$500,000.00 =</i>	<i>\$1,000.00</i>
<i>.001 X \$1,000,000.00 =</i>	<i><u>1,000.00</u></i>
	<i>\$2,000.00</i>
<i>Estimated project cost = \$5,000,000.00</i>	
<i>.002 X \$500,000.00 =</i>	<i>\$1,000.00</i>
<i>.001 X \$1,500,000.00 =</i>	<i>1,500.00</i>
<i>.0001 X \$3,000,000.00 =</i>	<i><u>300.00</u></i>
	<i>\$2,800.00</i>

(b) *The fee schedule in effect at the time of filing shall apply throughout the duration of such application.*

(c) *If the actual project cost exceeds the estimated cost by more than 5 percent, a further fee for such projects shall become due and shall be equal to the difference between the filing fee paid and the amount computed under the schedule above using the actual cost of the project. The actual project cost shall be determined as directed in Section 5-105 and billed according to Section 5-107.*

(d) *If the applicant requests the cancellation or withdrawal of the application and return of the plans and specifications and filing fee, this shall be granted unless the review has begun. No portion of the filing fee can be returned after the review has started.*

*Authority: Government Code Section 4453.*

*Reference: Government Code Section 4454.*

**HISTORY:**

1. *New section filed 8-30-84; effective upon filing pursuant to Government Code Section 11346.2(d) (Register 84, No. 35).*
2. *(OSA/AC-A 1/89) Editorial transfer from CCR, Title 21 to Title 24 11-1-89.*
3. *(OSA/AC-A 2/89) Amend CCR, Title 24, Part 1, Section 5-104(a)(b), effective 1-1-90. Approved by Building Standards Commission 10-30-89.*
4. *(OSA/AC EF 1/92) Emergency order by the Office of the State Architect/Access Compliance to amend Section 5-104(a), Part 1, Title 24, California Code of Regulations. Filed as an emergency order with the secretary of state February 25, 1992; effective March 1, 1992. Approved as an emergency by the California Building Standards Commission on February 24, 1992.*
5. *(OSA/AC EF 1/92) Emergency order by the Office of the State Architect/Access Compliance to amend Section 5-104(a), Part 1, Title 24, California Code of Regulations; approved by the California Building Standards Commission on February 24, 1992; filed as an emergency order with the secretary of state February 25, 1992, and effective March 1, 1992, has lapsed. No action was taken by the OSA/AC to make these regulations permanent; therefore, the initial regulations are back in effect as of June 29, 1992.*

**5-105. Project Cost.**

*For purposes of determining the fees, both the estimated and actual project cost shall be the cost for the total outlay contemplated for all work included in the certified plans and specifications. The term "project" shall be defined as all buildings and other structures, together with the development of the site, but in the event the plans and specifications submitted with the application do not provide for the construction of, addition or alteration to a building or structure, then it shall be for the site development proposed in the application.*

*The actual project cost shall include all items which are normally considered to be contractors operation costs. Addenda or change order items which increase the contract amount shall be included in the final actual project cost computation.*

*All fees and/or reimbursable charges paid the construction managers shall be included in the actual project cost. When the contract for the work includes items not otherwise subject to the approval of the office and not included in the approved plans and specifications the actual cost shall include this work unless such costs are segregated by separate bid items or by separately priced items of change orders or by separately priced items of change orders, or by a certified copy of the subcontractor's bid. Such segregation shall not be made by contract price breakdown or estimates.*



*Authority: Government Code Section 4454.*

*Reference: Government Code Section 4454.*

**HISTORY:**

*1. New section filed 8-30-84; effective upon filing pursuant to Government Code Section 11346.2(d) (Register 84, No. 35).*

**5-106. Revision of Plans and Specifications.**

*No additional fee is charged upon submission of revisions to the approved plans and specifications, provided that the entire matter is actually one transaction having to do with the same project and the revisions do not require substantial review for accessibility. If the original plans are abandoned and the plans and specifications submitted in lieu thereof are in fact for a new project rather than an identical project, or where a modified set of plans is for an essentially different concept, it is necessary that a new application be filed and a fee paid. This is regardless of the fact that the project may have the same name, be of the same general size, and be situated at the same location as the project for which the original application was made.*

*Authority: Government Code Section 4454.*

*Reference: Government Code Section 4454.*

**HISTORY:**

*1. New section filed 8-30-84; effective upon filing pursuant to Government Code Section 11346.2(d) (Register 84, No. 35).*

**5-107. Billing for Further Fees.**

*For public school projects, the DSA/ORS shall determine whether or not further fees are due and shall bill the district for such further fees. For projects other than public schools, the applicant or owner shall submit to the office a report verifying the actual project cost within 90 days after the completion of the project. This actual project cost shall be the basis for the further fee \*computation. The accuracy and timely submission of this actual project cost report shall be the responsibility of the owner or his designated agent. The owner shall be billed for further fees upon completion of the project or portion thereof if fee is due.*

*Authority: Government Code Section 4454.*

*Reference: Government Code Section 4454.*

**HISTORY:**

*New section filed 8-30-84; effective upon filing pursuant to Government Code Section 11346.2(d) (Register 84, No. 35).*

**5-108. Refunds.**

*Claims for refunds of five dollars or less due to errors in cost reporting or fee computation shall be made within one year from the date of payment.*

*Authority: Government Code Section 4454.*

*Reference: Government Code Section 4454.*

**HISTORY:**

*1. New section filed 8-30-84; effective upon filing pursuant to Government Code Section 11346.2(d) (Register 84, No. 35).*

**5-109. Review of Plans and Specifications.**

*The DSA/ORS will review the submitted documents to ensure that the requirements cited in Article 1 are fully met.*

*Authority: Government Code Section 4454.*

*Reference: Government Code Section 4454.*

**HISTORY:**

*1. Amendment filed 11-24-78; designated effective 1-1-79 (Register 78, No. 47).*

**5-110. Written Approval.**

*(a) Approval Obtained. Upon completion of review, DSA/ORS will return to the awarding authority a written approval, if the documents comply with the requirements. This approval of the application constitutes the "written approval" required by Section 4454 of the Government Code. No changes or revisions shall be made following written approval which affect handicapped compliance items unless such changes or revisions are submitted to the Access Compliance Section of the DSA/ORS for approval.*

*(b) Approval Denied. If the documents fail to meet the requirements of these regulations, DSA/ORS will return to the awarding authority the plans with corrections noted thereon together with instructions for resubmittal of the plans and specifications. The corrected plans are the property of the Division of the State Architect and shall be returned within six months or the application will be void. No valid construction contract may be awarded before written approval is obtained.*

*(c) Unauthorized Deviations. In the event that there is an unauthorized deviation from the requirements of these regulations with respect to the standards specified, the same shall be rectified by full compliance therewith within ninety (90) days after discovery of such deviation.*

*(d) Notification. Where the State Architect is the enforcement authority and any project is proposed to be approved and such approval action would deny accessibility either required by Sections 4450 and 4458, inclusive, of the government Code to handicapped persons, or by reason of an equivalent facilitation exception granted pursuant to Section 4451 of the Government Code, the State Architect shall notify affected handicapped persons or organizations and others who have made written requests to be informed as to such proposals under consideration.*

*Authority: Government Code Section 4454.*

*Reference: Government Code, Section 4454. (as interpreted by the California Superior Court, City and County of San Francisco, in California Association of the Physically Handicapped vs. Trustees of the California State University and Colleges, No. 692231, judgment entered 9-16-80) and 4454.*

**HISTORY:**

- 1. Amendment filed 11-24-78; designated effective 1-1-79 (Register 78, No. 47).*
- 2. New subsection (d) filed 3-6-81 as an emergency; effective upon filing (Register 81, No. 10). A Certificate of Compliance must be transmitted to OAL within 120 days or emergency language will be repealed on 7-4-81.*
- 3. Order of Repeal of 3-6-81 emergency order filed 3-13-81 by OAL pursuant to Government Code Section 11349.6 (Register 81, No. 11).*
- 4. New subsection (d) filed 7-28-82; effective thirtieth day (Register 82, No. 31).*
- 5. Amendment of subsection (a) filed 7-17-85; effective thirtieth day thereafter (Register 85, No. 29).*

***5-111. General Requirements.***

*General requirements and building standards are located in Title 24, Part 2.*

## **PART 2**

# **THE CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE**

# Chapter 1

## ADMINISTRATION

### SECTION 101 - TITLE, PURPOSE AND SCOPE

**101.1 Title.** These regulations shall be known as the *Uniform Building Code*, may be cited as such and will be referred to herein as "this code."

*For the State of California, these regulations shall be known as the California Building Code. The provisions contained in the California Building Code of the (compiled) California Building Standards Code as defined in Section 18910, Health and Safety Code, may be cited as such and are referred to hereafter as "these regulations" or "these building standards" or "this code."*

**101.2 Purpose.**

*[For DSA-AC] The purpose of this code is to ensure that barrier-free design is incorporated in all buildings, facilities, site work and other developments to which this code applies and to ensure that they are accessible to and usable by persons with disabilities.*

**101.3 Scope.**

**101.3.1** *The provisions of the model codes which are adopted by these regulations are applicable to all occupancy groups and uses regulated by this code. The amendments to the model codes are applicable only to those occupancies or uses which the state agency adopting the amendments is authorized to regulate as listed in Section 101.17.*

**NOTE:** *It is not the intent of this section that every existing occupancy within the scope of the state fire marshal's jurisdiction mandatorily conform or be made to conform to the new construction requirements relative to fire, panic and explosion safety. Reasonable judgment must be exercised by the enforcing agency in the application of these building standards to existing occupancies.*

**101.4 Effective Date.**

**101.4.1** *One hundred and eighty days after the date of publication, or as otherwise noted herein.*

**NOTE:** *For clarification purposes, the applicable subsection of the Health and Safety Code section is repeated.*

**Sec. 18938. Application and Effective Date.** *The building standards contained in the Uniform Fire Code, published by the International Conference of Building Officials and the Western Fire Chiefs Association, the Uniform Building Code published by the International Conference of Building Officials, the Uniform Plumbing Code published by the International Association of Plumbing and Mechanical Officials, the National Electrical Code published by the National Fire Protection Association, the Uniform Mechanical Code published by the International Conference of Building Officials, as referenced in the California Building Standards Code, shall apply to all occupancies throughout the state and shall become effective 180 days after publication in the California Buildings Standards Code by the California Building Standards Commission, or at a later date after publication established by the commission.*

**101.5 Format.** *This part fundamentally adopts the UBC. by reference on a chapter-by-chapter basis. Such adoption is reflected in the adoption table of each chapter of this part. When the adoption table of a chapter of this part makes no reference to a specific chapter of the UBC, such chapter of the UBC is not adopted as a portion of this code.*

**101.6 Validity.** *If any chapter section, subsection, sentence, clause or phrase of this code is for any reason held to be unconstitutional, contrary to statute, exceeding the authority of the state as stipulated by statutes, or otherwise inoperative, such decision shall not affect the validity of the remaining portion of this code.*

**101.7 Standard Reference Documents.** *The codes, standards and publications adopted and set forth in this code, including other codes, standards and publications referred to therein are, by title and date of publication, hereby adopted as standard reference documents of this code.*

*When this code does not specifically cover any subject relating to building design and construction, recognized fire-prevention engineering practices shall be employed. The National Fire Codes and the Fire Protection Handbook of the National Fire Protection Association may be used as authoritative guides in determining recognized fire-prevention engineering practices.*

**101.8 Nonbuilding Regulations.** *Requirements contained in the UBC, or in any other referenced standard, code or document, which are not building standards as defined in Section 18909, Health and Safety Code, shall not be construed as part of the provisions of this code.*

*For the applicability of regulations relating to maintenance, operation, use, limitations or prohibitions, and similar nonbuilding regulations, see other titles of the California Code of Regulations.*

**101.9 Order of Precedence.**

**101.9.1 General.** *In the event of any differences between these building standards and the standard reference documents, the text of these building standards shall govern. Where a specific provision varies from a general provision, the specific provision shall apply.*

**101.9.2 Fire Codes.** *Nothing in these building standards shall diminish the requirements of the state fire marshal.*

**101.16 Availability of Code.** *For clarification purposes, the applicable subsection of the Health and Safety Code section is repeated.*

**Sec. 18942 (d).** *Each city, county, and city and county, including charter cities, shall obtain and maintain with all revisions on a current basis, at least one copy of the building standards and other state regulations relating to buildings published in Title 8, 19, 20, 24 and 25 of the California Code of Regulations. These codes shall be maintained in the office of the building official responsible for the administration and enforcement of the provisions of this part.*

#### **101.17 Application**

**Vesting Authority.** *When adopted by a state agency, the provisions of these regulations shall be enforced by the appropriate enforcing agency, but only to the extent of authority granted to such agency by the state legislature.*

*Following is a list of the state agencies that adopt building standards, the specific scope of application of the agency responsible for enforcement, and the specific statutory authority of each agency to adopt and enforce such provisions of building standards of this code, unless otherwise stated.*

##### **101.17.11. DSA/AC. Access Compliance, Division of the State Architect.**

**General.** *To assure that barrier-free design is incorporated in all buildings, facilities, site work and other improvements to which this code applies in compliance with state law to assure that these improvements are accessible to and usable by persons with disabilities. Additions, alterations and structural repairs in all buildings and facilities shall comply with these provisions for new buildings, except as otherwise provided and specified herein.*

*The provisions of these regulations shall apply to any portable buildings leased or owned by a school district, and shall also apply to temporary and emergency buildings and facilities.*



*In addition, to incorporate standards at least as restrictive as those required by the federal government for barrier-free design under (1) Title III (Public Accommodations and Commercial Facilities), Subpart D (New Construction and Alteration) and Appendix A (Americans with Disabilities Act Accessibility Guidelines) (see 28 C.F.R., Part 36), and (2) Title II (Public Entities), Section 35.151 (New Construction and Alterations) (see 28 C.F.R., Part 35) both from the Americans with Disabilities Act of 1990, and (3) under the Fair Housing Amendments of 1988. Some of these regulations may be more stringent than state law in order to meet the federal requirement.*

**1. Application.** *Publicly funded buildings, structures, sidewalks, curbs and related facilities shall be accessible to persons with disabilities as follows:*

**NOTE:** *See Government Code commencing with Section 4450.*

*1.1 All buildings, structures, sidewalks, curbs and related facilities constructed by the use of the state, county or municipal funds, or the funds of any political subdivision of the state.*

*1.2 All buildings, structures and facilities, occupied 50 percent or more, which are leased, rented, contracted, sublet or hired for periods in excess of two years by any municipal county, or state division of government, or by a special district. The determination as to whether the building, structure or facility is occupied 50 percent or more shall be based on the usable floor area as defined in this code.*

*1.3 All publicly funded buildings used for congregate residences or for one- or two-family dwelling unit purposes shall conform to the provisions applicable to living accommodations.*

*1.4 All existing publicly funded buildings and facilities when alterations, structural repairs or additions are made to such buildings or facilities. For detailed requirements on existing buildings see Chapter 11B, Division IV.*

*1.5 With respect to buildings, structures, sidewalks, curbs and related facilities not requiring a building permit, building standards published in the California Building Standards Code relating to access for persons with disabilities and other regulations adopted pursuant to Government Code Section 4450, and in effect at the time construction is commenced, shall be applicable.*

**2. Application.** *All privately funded public accommodations, as defined, and commercial facilities, as defined, shall be accessible to persons with disabilities as follows:*

**NOTE:** *See Health and Safety Code, commencing with Section 19952.*

**EXCEPTION:** *Certain types of privately funded multistory buildings do not require installation of an elevator to provide access above and below the first floor. See Chapter 11B.*

**NOTE:** *Exceptions for multistoried buildings formerly located in this section have been moved to Chapter 11B.*

2.1 *Any building, structure, facility, complex or improved area or portions thereof which are used by the general public.*

2.2 *Any sanitary facilities which are made available for the public, clients or employees in such accommodations or facilities.*

2.3 *Any curb or sidewalk intended for public use that is constructed in this state with private funds.*

2.4 *All existing privately funded public accommodations when alterations, structural repairs or additions are made to such public accommodations as set forth under Chapter 11B.*

### 3. **Enforcing Agency.**

3.1 *The director of General Services where state funds are utilized for any project or where funds of counties, municipalities or other political subdivisions are utilized for the construction of elementary, secondary or community college projects.*

3.2 *The governing bodies where funds of counties, municipalities or other political subdivisions are utilized except as otherwise provided above.*

3.3 *The building department of every city, county, or city and county within the territorial area of its city, county, or city and county, where private funds are utilized. "Building department" means the department, bureau or officer charged with the enforcement of laws or ordinances regulating the erection or construction, or both the erection and construction, of buildings.*

### 4. **Special Conditions for Persons with Disabilities Requiring Appeals Action Ratification.**

*Whenever reference is made in these regulations to this section, the findings and determinations required to be rendered by the local enforcing agency shall be subject to ratification through an appeals process.*

### 5. **Authority Cited--**Government Code Section 4450.

### 6. **Reference--**Government Code Sections 4450 through 4458 and Health and Safety Code Sections 19952 through 19959.

## Chapter 2

# DEFINITIONS AND ABBREVIATIONS

### SECTION 201 - DEFINITIONS

#### SECTION 202 - A

**ACCESS FLOOR SYSTEM** is an assembly consisting of panels mounted on pedestals to provide an under-floor space for the installations of mechanical, electrical, communication or similar systems or to serve as an air-supply or return-air plenum.

*[For DSA/AC] **ACCESSIBILITY** is the combination of various elements in a building or area which allows access, circulation and the full use of the building and facilities by persons with disabilities.*

*[For DSA/AC] **ACCESSIBLE ELEMENT** is an element specified by the regulations adopted by the Division of the State Architect/Access Compliance.*

*[For DSA/AC] **ACCESSIBLE LOCATION** is a location which can be reached by an employee standing on the floor, platform, runway or other permanent working area.*

*[For DSA/AC] **ACCESSIBLE SPACE** is a space that complies with the regulations adopted by the Division of the State Architect/Access Compliance.*

*[For HCD 1 & 2] **ACI** is the American Concrete Institute, Box 19150, Redford Station Detroit, Michigan 48219.*

*[For DSA/AC] **ADDITION** is an extension or increase in floor area or height of a building or structure.*

*[For DOSH] **ADULT** is a person who has attained or exceeds the age of 18 years.*

**AEROSOL** is a product which is dispensed by a propellant from a metal can up to a maximum size of 33.8 fluid ounces (1000 mL) or a glass or plastic bottle up to a size of 4 fluid ounces (118.2 mL), other than a rim-vented container.

*[For SFM] **AGED HOME OR INSTITUTION** is a facility used for the housing of persons 65 years of age or older in need of care and supervision. (See definition of Acare and supervision, Section 204.)*

**AGRICULTURAL BUILDING** is a structure designed and constructed to house farm implements, hay, grain, poultry, livestock or other horticultural products. This structure shall not be a place of human habitation or a place of employment where agricultural products are processed, treated or packaged; nor shall it be a place used by the public.

*[For HCD 1 & 2]* **AISC** is the American Institute of Steel Construction, Inc., One East Wacker Drive, Suite 3100, Chicago, Illinois 60601-2001.

*[For DSA/AC]* **AISLE** is a circulation path between objects such as seats, tables, merchandise, equipment, displays, shelves, desks, etc.

*[For DSA/AC]* **AISLE, EMPLOYEE AREAS**, (as required for architectural accessibility) is a space that serves as a passageway, which is created by architectural components such as walls, fixed cabinetry or fixtures and not moveable components such as furniture.

*[For DSA/AC]* **ALLEY** is any public way or thoroughfare less than 16 feet (4877 mm) but not less than 10 feet (3048) in width which has been dedicated or deeded to the public for public use.

*[For DSA/AC]* **ALTER** or **ALTERATION** is any change, addition or modification in construction or occupancy.

**AMUSEMENT BUILDING.** See Section 408.2.

*[For HCD 1 & 2, DSA/AC]* **ANSI** is the American National Standards Institute, 1430 Broadway, New York, New York 10018.

*[For HCD 1 & 2, DSA/AC]* **APARTMENT HOUSE** is any building or portion thereof which contains three or more dwelling units and, for the purpose of this code, includes residential condominiums.

**APPROVED**, as to material and types of construction, refers to approval by the building official as the result of investigation and tests conducted by the building official, or by reason of accepted principles or tests by recognized authorities, technical or scientific organizations.

*[For HCD 1 & 2, DSA/SS]* **Approved** means meeting the approval of the enforcement agency, except as otherwise provided by statute, when used in connection with any system, material, type of construction, fixture or appliance as the result of investigations and tests conducted by the agency, or by reason of accepted principals or tests by national authorities, technical, health, or scientific organizations or agencies.

***Note:** See Health and Safety Code Section 17921.1 for approved as applied to hotplates. See Health and Safety Code Section 17921.3 for approved as applied to low-flush water closets.*

**APPROVED AGENCY** is an established and recognized agency regularly engaged in conducting tests or furnishing inspection services, when such agency has been approved.

**APPROVED FABRICATOR** is an established and qualified person, firm or corporation approved by the building official pursuant to Section 1701A.7 of this code.

*[For HCD 1 & 2] APPROVED LISTING AGENCY is any agency approved by the enforcement agency unless otherwise provided by statute, which is in the business of listing and labeling and which makes available at least an annual published report of such listings in which specific information is included that the product has been tested to recognized standards and found to comply.*

*[For DSA/AC, HCD 1 & 2] APPROVED TESTING AGENCY is any agency which is determined by enforcement agency, except as otherwise provided by statute, to have adequate personnel and expertise to carry out the testing of systems, materials, type of construction fixtures or appliances.*

**AREA.** See Aflor area.

**ASSEMBLY BUILDING** is a building or portion of a building used for the gathering together of 50 or more persons for such purposes as deliberation, education, instruction, worship, entertainment, amusement, drinking or dining, or awaiting transportation.

*[For HCD 2, DSA/AC, SFM] Any building or structure or portion thereof used or intended to be used for the showing of motion pictures when an admission fee is charged and when such building or structure is open to the public and has a capacity of 10 or more persons.*

*[For HCD 1 & 2] ASTM* is the American Society for Testing and Materials, 1916 Race Street, Philadelphia, Pennsylvania 19103.

*[For HCD 1 & 2] ATRIUM* is an opening through two or more floor levels other than enclosed stairways, elevators, hoistways, escalators, plumbing, electrical, air-conditioning or other equipment, which is closed at the top and not defined as a mall. Floor levels, as used in this definition, do not include balconies within assembly occupancies or mezzanines which comply with Section 507.

*[For HCD 1 & 2, DOSH] ATTIC STORY* is any story immediately below the roof and wholly or partly within the roof framing, designed, arranged or built for business or storage use.

**[For DSA/AC, HCD 1/AC] AUTOMATIC**, as applied to fire-protection devices, is a device or system providing an emergency function without the necessity of human intervention and activated as a result of a predetermined temperature rise, rate of rise of temperature or increase in the level of combustion products.

**[For DSA/AC] AUTOMATIC DOOR** is a door equipped with a power-operated mechanism and controls that open and close the door automatically upon receipt of a momentary actuating signal. The switch that begins the automatic cycle may be a photoelectric device, floor mat, or manual switch.

## **SECTION 203- B**

**BALCONY** is that portion of the seating space of an assembly room, the lowest part of which is raised 4 feet (1219 mm) or more above the level of the main floor and shall include the area providing access to the seating area or serving only as a foyer.

**BUILDING** is any structure *[for HCD 1 & 2, DSA/AC, SFM]* as to which state agencies have regulatory power, used or intended for supporting or sheltering any use or occupancy, *[for HCD 1 & 2, DSA/AC, SFM]* housing or enclosure of persons, animals, chattels, equipment or property of any kind, and also includes structures wherein things may be grown, made, produced, kept, handled, stored or disposed of, and all appendages, accessories, apparatus, appliances and equipment installed as a part thereof.

*“Building” shall not include machinery, equipment or appliances installed for manufacture or process purposes only, nor shall it include any construction installations which are not a part of a building, any tunnel, mine shaft, highway or bridge, or include any house trailer or vehicle which conforms to the Vehicle Code.*

**[For HCD 1 & 2, DSA/AC] BUILDING, EXISTING**, is a building erected prior to the adoption of this code, or one for which a legal building permit has been issued.

**BUILDING OFFICIAL** is the officer or other designated authority charged with the administration and enforcement of this code, the building official’s duly authorized representative *[for HCD 1 & 2, DSA, SFM]* in accordance with state law, Health and Safety Code Section 13146, in occupancies regulated by the state fire marshal.

## **SECTION 204 - C**

**[For HCD 1 & 2, DSA/AC, SFM, DSA/SS] C.C.R.** means the California Code of Regulations.

**[For DSA/AC] CIRCULATION PATH** is an exterior or interior way of passage from one place to another for pedestrians, including, but not limited to, walks, hallways, courtyards, stairways and stair landings.

**[For DSA/AC] CLOSED-CIRCUIT TELEPHONE** is a telephone with dedicated line(s) such as a house phone, courtesy phone or phone that must be used to gain entrance to a facility.

**[For HCD 2, DSA/AC] COMMERCE** is travel, trade, traffic, commerce, transportation, or communication (1) within the State; (2) among the several states; (3) between any foreign country or any territory or possession and any state; or (4) between points in the same state, but through another state or foreign country.

**[For HCD 2, DSA/AC] COMMERCIAL FACILITIES** are facilities that are intended for nonresidential use and whose operations will affect commerce, including factories, warehouses, office buildings, and other buildings in which employment may occur. Commercial facilities shall not include railroad locomotives, railroad freight cars, railroad cabooses, railroad cars covered under Title III of the Americans with Disabilities Act of 1990, or facilities that are covered or expressly exempted from coverage under the Fair Housing Amendment Act of 1988 (42 USC 3601-3631, et seq.).

**[For HCD 1 & 2, DSA/AC] COMMON USE** refers to those interior and exterior rooms, spaces or elements that are made available for the use of a restricted group of people (for example, occupants of a homeless shelter, the occupants of an office building, or the guests of such occupants).

**[For HCD 1 & 2, DSA/AC] CONDOMINIUM, RESIDENTIAL.** See Apartment house.

**[For HCD 1 & 2, DSA/AC] CONGREGATE RESIDENCE** is any building or portion thereof which contains facilities for living, sleeping and sanitation, as required by this code, and may include facilities for eating and cooking, for occupancy by other than a family. A congregate residence may be a shelter, convent, monastery, dormitory, fraternity or sorority house but does not include jails, hospitals, nursing homes, hotels or lodging houses.

**[For DSA/AC] CROSS SLOPE** is the slope that is perpendicular to the direction of travel.

**[For HCD 2, DSA/AC] CURB CUT** is an interruption of a curb at a pedestrian way, which separates surfaces that are substantially at the same elevation.

**[For HCD 2, DSA/AC] CURB RAMP** is a sloping pedestrian way, intended for pedestrian traffic, which provides access between a walk or sidewalk to a surface located above or below an adjacent curb face.

## **SECTION 205 - D**

**[For DSA/AC] DETECTABLE WARNING** is a standardized surface or feature built in or applied to walking surfaces or other elements to warn visually impaired persons of hazards in the path of travel.

*[For HCD 1 & 2, DSA/AC] **DIRECTIONAL SIGN** is a publicly displayed notice which indicates by use of words or symbols a recommended direction or route of travel.*

*[For DSA/AC] **DISABILITY** is (1) a physical or mental impairment that substantially limits one or more of the major life activities of an individual, or (2) a record of such an impairment, or (3) being regarded as having such an impairment.*

*[For DSA/AC] **DISABLED**. See disability.*

*[For HCD 1&2, HCD 1/AC, DSA/AC] **DORMITORY** is a room occupied by more than two guests.*

*[For HCD 1 & 2, DSA/AC] **DWELLING UNIT** is any building or portion thereof which contains living facilities, including provisions for sleeping, eating, cooking and sanitation, as required by this code for not more than one family, or a congregate residence for 10 or less persons.*

## **SECTION 206 - E**

*[For DSA/AC] **ELEVATOR, PASSENGER**. See Chapter 11.*

*[For HCD 1 & 2, DSA/AC, SFM, OSHPD 1, 2, 3 & 4, DSA/SS] **ENFORCING AGENCY** is the designated department or agency as specified by statute.*

*[For DSA/AC] **ENTRANCE** shall mean any entrance to a facility which has a substantial flow of pedestrian traffic to any specific major function of the facility.*

*[For HCD 1 & 2, DSA/AC] **EQUIVALENT FACILITATION** is an alternate means of complying with the literal requirements of these standards and specifications that provides access in terms of the purpose of these standards and specifications.*

**NOTES:** 1. See Section 101.2 Purpose.

2. In determining equivalent facilitation, consideration shall be given to means that provide for the maximum independence of persons with disabilities while presenting the least risk of harm, injury or other hazard to such persons or others.

*[For HCD 1 & 2, DSA/AC] **EXISTING BUILDINGS**. See “building, existing.”*

*[For HCD 1 & 2, DSA/AC] **EXIT**. See Section 1005.1*



## **SECTION 207 - F**

*[For HCD 1 & 2, DSA/AC] FACILITY (or FACILITIES) is a building, structure, room, site, complex or any portion thereof, that is built, altered, improved or developed to serve a particular purpose.*

## **SECTION 208 - G**

*[For HCD 1 & 2, DSA/AC] GRAB BAR is a bar for the purpose of being grasped by the hand for support.*

*[For HCD 1 & 2, DSA/AC] GUARDRAIL is a vertical barrier erected along the open edges of a floor opening, wall opening, ramp, platform, runway or other elevated area to prevent persons from falling off the open edge.*

## **SECTION 209 - H**

*[For DSA/AC] HEALTH CARE PROVIDER is a person or entity regulated by a state to provide professional services related to the physical or mental health of an individual and who makes such services available to the public.*

*[For DSA/AC] HISTORICAL BUILDING See “qualified historical building.”*

*[For HDC 1 & 2, DSA/AC] HOTEL is any building containing six or more guest rooms intended or designed to be used, or which are used, rented or hired out to be occupied, or which are occupied for sleeping purposes by guests.*

*[For HCD 1 & 2, DSA/AC] HOT-WATER-HEATING BOILER is a boiler having a volume exceeding 120 gallons (454.2 L), or a heat input exceeding 200,000 Btu/h (149 540 kW), or an operating temperature exceeding 210EF.(99EC.) that provides hot water to be used externally to itself.*

## **SECTION 210 - I**

*[For HCD 1 & 2, DSA/AC] INTERNATIONAL SYMBOL OF ACCESSIBILITY is that symbol adopted by Rehabilitation International's 11th World Congress for the purpose of indicating that buildings and facilities are accessible to persons with disabilities. See Section 11B.*

## **SECTION 211 - J**

**JURISDICTION**, as used in this code, is any political subdivision which adopts this code for administrative regulations within its sphere of authority.

## **SECTION 212 - K**

*[For HCD 1 & 2, DSA/AC] KICK PLATE is an abrasion-resistant plate affixed to the bottom portion of a door to prevent a trap condition and protect its surface.*

## **SECTION 213 - L**

*[For HCD 1 & 2, DSA/AC] LEVEL AREA is a specified surface that does not have a slope in any direction exceeding 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) in 1 foot run (305 mm) from the horizontal (2.083 percent gradient).*

*[For DSA/AC] LIFT, SPECIAL ACCESS See “special access lifts.”*

*[For HCD 1, DSA/AC] LIVING ACCOMMODATIONS means any building or portion thereof having three or more apartments as defined in this code or any publicly funded building or portion thereof.*

## **SECTION 214 - M**

*[For DSA/AC, HCD 1/AC] MARKED CROSSING is a crosswalk or other identified path intended for pedestrian use in crossing a vehicular way.*

*[For HCD 1 & 2, DSA/AC] MOTEL shall mean hotel as defined in this code.*

*[For HCD 1 & 2, DSA/AC] MULTIPLE-ACCOMMODATION TOILET FACILITY is a room that has more than one sanitary fixture, is intended for the use of more than one person at a time, and which usually is provided with privacy compartments or screens shielding some fixtures from view. A bathroom serving a hotel guest room and a privacy toilet in small offices, stores and similar locations are not included in this category.*

## **SECTION 215 - N**

## **SECTION 216 - O**

*[For HCD 2, DSA/AC] OCCUPIABLE is a room or enclosed space designed for human occupancy in which individuals congregate for amusement, educational or similar purposes, or in which occupants are engaged at labor, and which is equipped with means of egress, light, and ventilation.*

*[For DSA/AC] OPERABLE PART is a part of a piece of equipment or appliance used to insert or withdraw objects, or to activate, deactivate or adjust the equipment or appliance (for example, coin slot, pushbutton, handle).*

## Section 217 - P

*[For HCD 1 & 2, DSA/AC ] **PASSAGE DOOR** is a door other than an exit door through which persons may traverse.*

*[For HCD 1 & 2, DSA/AC] **PASSENGER ELEVATOR**. See Definition of “elevator”, Chapter 30.*

*[For DSA/AC] **PATH OF TRAVEL** is a passage that may consist of walks and sidewalks, curb ramps and pedestrian ramps, lobbies and corridors, elevators, other improved areas, or a necessary combination thereof, that provides free and unobstructed access to and egress from a particular area or location for pedestrians and/or wheelchair users.*

*[For HCD 1 & 2, DSA/AC] **PEDESTRIAN** is an individual who moves in walking areas with or without the use of walking-assistive devices such as crutches, leg braces, wheelchairs, etc.*

*[For DSA/AC] **PEDESTRIAN GRADE SEPARATION** is a structure erected over or under an obstacle such as a freeway, roadway, street, railroad, stream, etc., and intended primarily for pedestrian use.*

*[For HCD 1 & 2, DSA/AC] **PEDESTRIAN RAMP** is a sloping path of travel intended for pedestrian traffic and as differentiated from a curb ramp.*

*[For HCD 1 & 2, DSA/AC] **PEDESTRIAN WALKWAY** is a walkway used exclusively as a pedestrian trafficway.*

*[For HCD 1 & 2, DSA/AC] **PEDESTRIAN WAY** is a route by which a pedestrian may pass.*

*[For DSA/AC] **PERMANENT** shall mean facilities which are intended to be used for periods longer than those designated in this code under the definition of temporary.*

*[For HCD 1 & 2, DSA/AC] **PERMIT** is an official document or certificate issued by the building official authorizing performance of a specified activity.*

*[For DSA/AC] **PLATFORM, UNENCLOSED**, is a horizontal, generally level and raised surface for speakers, performances, displays, etc., as distinguished from platforms which are enclosed.*

*[For HCD 1 & 2, DSA/AC] POWER-ASSISTED DOOR is a door used for human passage with a mechanism that helps to open the door, or relieves the opening resistance of a door, upon the activation of a switch or a continued force applied to the door itself.*

*{PRIMARY ENTRANCE shall mean any entrance to a facility which has a substantial flow of pedestrian traffic to any specific major function of the facility.---To be fixed by errata.}*

*{PRIVATELY FUNDED as used in this code shall mean construction or alteration projects which are not subsidized in whole or in part by the use, directly or indirectly of state, county, or municipal funds, or the funds of any political subdivision of the state, county, or municipality. Private funding includes loans, grants, guarantees or other financial assistance provided to an individual home owner by a public agency to finance construction, rehabilitation, or purchase for that individual's home, including housing financed under the Cal Vet program. .---To be fixed by errata}*

*[For HCD 1 & 2, DSA/AC] PUBLIC ACCOMMODATION includes, but is not limited to, any building or facility that falls into one of the following categories:*

- 1. Places of lodging.*
- 2. Establishments serving food or drink.*
- 3. Places of exhibition or entertainment.*
- 4. Places of public gathering.*
- 5. Sales or rental establishments.*
- 6. Service establishments.*
- 7. Stations used for public transportation.*
- 8. Places of public display or collection.*
- 9. Places of recreation.*
- 10. Places of education.*
- 11. Social service center establishments.*
- 12. Places of exercise or recreation.*

*Examples of public accommodations for purposes of this code shall include, but not be limited to, the following private entities; however, other specific entities not listed shall be considered public accommodations if they fall into one or more of the above-listed categories.*

1. *An inn, hotel, motel, or other place of lodging, except for an establishment located within a building that contains not more than five rooms for rent or hire and that is actually occupied by the proprietor of such establishment as the residence of the proprietor.*
2. *A restaurant, bar, or other establishment serving food or drink.*
3. *A motion picture house, theater, concert hall, stadium or other place of exhibition or entertainment.*
4. *An auditorium, convention center, lecture hall, or other place of public gathering.*
5. *A bakery, grocery store, clothing store, hardware store, shopping center, or other sales or retail establishment.*
6. *A Laundromat, dry cleaner, bank, barber shop, beauty shop, travel service, shoe repair service, funeral parlor, gas station, office of an accountant or lawyer, pharmacy, insurance office, professional office of a health care provider, hospital or other service establishment.*
7. *A terminal, depot, or other station used for specified public transportation.*
8. *A museum, library, gallery, or other place of public display or collection.*
9. *A park, zoo, amusement park, or other place of recreation.*
10. *A nursery, elementary, secondary, undergraduate, or postgraduate private school, or other place of education.*
11. *A day-care center, senior citizen center, homeless shelter, food bank, adoption agency, or other social service center establishment.*
12. *A gymnasium, health spa, bowling alley, golf course, or other place of exercise.*
13. *A church.*
14. *An office building.*
15. *A public curb or sidewalk.*

**[For HCD 1 & 2] PUBLICLY FUNDED** as used in this code does not include loans, grants, guarantees or other financial assistance provided by a public agency to finance construction, rehabilitation or purchase of privately owned housing accommodations, including housing financed under the Cal Vet program and other privately owned buildings, facilities and structures.

*[For HCD 1, DSA/AC] **PUBLIC USE** describes interior or exterior rooms or spaces that are made available to the general public. Public use may be provided at a building or facility that is privately or publicly owned.*

*[For HCD 1 & 2] **PUBLIC WAY**. See Section 1002.*

## **SECTION 218 - Q**

*[For DSA/AC] **QUALIFIED HISTORICAL BUILDING (OR STRUCTURE)** shall mean any structure or collection of structures deemed important to the history, architecture or culture of an area by an appropriate local or state governmental jurisdiction. This shall include structures of national, state or local historical registers or official inventories, such as the National register of Historic Places, State Historical Landmarks, State Points of Historical Interest, and city or county registers or inventories of historical or architecturally significant sites and places or landmarks. See the California Historical Building Code, Part 8, Title 24, California Code of Regulations.*

## **SECTION 219 - R**

*[For DSA/AC] **RAIL TRANSIT BOARDING PLATFORM** is a horizontal, generally level surface, whether raised above, recessed below, or level with a transit rail, from which persons embark/disembark a fixed rail vehicle.*

*[For HCD 2, DSA/AC] **RAMP**. See “pedestrian ramp” or “curb ramp.”*

*[For HCD 2, DSA/AC] **REASONABLE PORTION** shall mean that segment of a building, facility, area, space or condition which would normally be necessary if the activity therein is to be accessible by persons with disabilities.*

*[For HCD 1 & 2, DSA/AC] **RECOMMEND** does not require mandatory acceptance, but identifies a suggested action which shall be considered for the purpose of providing a greater degree of accessibility to persons with disabilities.*

*[For HCD 1 & 2, DSA/AC, SFM] **REMODELING**. See “alter or alteration.”*

*[For HCD 1 & 2, DSA/AC] **REPAIR** is the reconstruction or renewal of any part of an existing building for the purpose of its maintenance.*

*[For HCD 1 & 2, DSA/AC] **RISER** is that upright portion of a step in a stair.*

*[For DSA/AC] **RUNNING SLOPE** is the slope that is parallel to the direction of travel.*

## SECTION 220 - S

*[For HCD 1 & 2, DSA/AC] **SANITARY FACILITY** is any single unit or a combination of water closets, urinals, lavatories, bathtubs or showers, together with the room or space in which they are housed.*

*[For HCD 2, DSA/AC] **SHOPPING CENTER** is one or more sales establishments or stores.*

*[For HCD 1 & 2, DSA/AC] **SHOULD**. See “recommend.”*

*[For DSA/AC] **SIDEWALK** is a surfaced pedestrian way contiguous to a street used by the public. See definition for “walk.”*

*[For DSA/AC] **SIGNAGE** is displayed verbal, symbolic, tactile, and/or pictorial information.*

*[For HCD 1 & 2, DSA/AC] **SINGLE-ACCOMMODATION SANITARY FACILITY** is a room that has not more than one of each type of sanitary fixture, is intended for use by only one person at a time, has no partition around the toilet, and has a door that can be locked on the inside by the room occupant.*

*[For HCD 2, DSA/AC] **SITE** is a parcel of land bounded by a property line or a designated portion of a public right of way.*

*[For HCD 1 & 2, DSA/AC] **SITE DEVELOPMENT** is “on-site” and “off-site” work, including, but not limited to, walks, sidewalks, ramps, curbs, curb ramps, parking facilities, stairs, planting areas, pools, promenades, exterior gathering or assembly areas and raised or depressed paved areas.*

*[For HCD 1, DSA/AC] **SLEEPING ACCOMMODATIONS** are rooms in which people sleep; for example, dormitory and hotel or motel guest rooms or suites.*

*[For HCD 2, DSA/AC] **SPACE** is a definable area, e.g., room, toilet room, hall, assembly area, entrance, storage room, alcove, courtyard, or lobby.*

*[For HCD 1 & 2, DSA/AC] **SPECIAL ACCESS LIFT** is a hoisting and lowering mechanism equipped with a car or platform, or support which serves two landings of a building or structure and is designed to carry a passenger or passengers and (or) luggage or other material a vertical distance as may be allowed.*

*[For HCD 1 & 2] **STAGE**. See Chapter 4.*

*[For HCD 1 & 2, DSA/AC, SFM] **STAIRWAY**. Two or more risers shall constitute a stairway.*

**[For HCD 1 & 2, DSA/AC] STORY** is that portion of a building included between the upper surface of any floor and the upper surface of the floor next above, except that the topmost story shall be that portion of a building included between the upper surface of the topmost floor and the ceiling or roof above. If the finished floor level directly above a usable or unused under-floor space is more than 6 feet (1829 mm) above grade as defined herein for more than 50 percent of the total perimeter or is more than 12 feet (3658 mm) above grade as defined herein at any point, such usable or unused under-floor space shall be considered as a story.

**[For HCD 1 & 2, DSA/AC] STRUCTURE** is that which is built or constructed, an edifice or building of any kind, or any piece of work artificially built up or composed of parts joined together in some definite manner.

## **SECTION 221 - T**

**[For HCD 2, DSA/AC] TACTILE** describes an object that can be perceived using the sense of touch.

**[For HCD 2, DSA/AC] TECHNICALLY INFEASIBLE** means, with respect to an alteration of a building or a facility, that it has little likelihood of being accomplished because existing structural conditions would require removing or altering a load-bearing member which is an essential part of the structural frame; or because other existing physical or site constraints prohibit modification or addition of elements, spaces, or features which are in full and strict compliance with the minimum requirements for new construction and which are necessary to provide accessibility.

**[For DSA/AC] TEMPORARY** shall mean buildings and facilities intended for use at one location for not more than one year and seats intended for use at one location for not more than 90 days.

**[For DSA/AC] TEXT TELEPHONE** is machinery or equipment that employs interactive graphic (i.e., typed) communications through the transmission of coded signals across the standard telephone network. Text telephones can include, for example, devices known as TDDs (telecommunication display devices) or computers.

**[For DSA/AC] TRANSIENT LODGING** is a building, facility, or portion thereof, excluding inpatient medical care facilities, that contains one or more dwelling units or sleeping accommodations. Transient lodging may include, but is not limited to, resorts, group homes, hotels, motels, and dormitories.

**[For HCD 1 & 2, DSA/AC] TREAD** is the horizontal surface of a step in a stair.



## SECTION 222 - U

*[For HCD 1 & 2, DSA/AC, SFM, DSA/SS] UBC shall mean the most recently adopted edition of the Uniform Building Code as published by the International Conference of Building Officials.*

*References to other model code sections which are found in any adopted sections of the model code or Title 24, C.C.R., must be compared to the appropriate matrix adoption table to determine if the enforcing agency has adopted the model code section or a modified Title 24, C.C.R., Section.*

*[For HCD 1 & 2, DSA/AC, SFM] UBC STANDARDS* are those standards published in Volume 3 of the *Uniform Building Code* promulgated by the International Conference of Building Officials as adopted by this jurisdiction.. (See Chapter 35.)

*[For DSA/AC] UNREASONABLE HARDSHIP* exists when the enforcing agency finds that compliance with the building standard would make the specific work of the project affected by the building standard unfeasible, based on an overall evaluation of the following factors:

- 1. The cost of providing access.*
- 2. The cost of all construction contemplated.*
- 3. The impact of proposed improvements on financial feasibility of the project.*
- 4. The nature of the accessibility which would be gained or lost.*
- 5. The nature of the use of the facility under construction and its availability to persons with disabilities. The details of any finding of unreasonable hardship shall be recorded and entered in the files of the enforcing agency.*

## SECTION 223 - V

*[For DSA/AC] VEHICULAR WAY* is a route intended for vehicular traffic, such as a street, driveway or parking lot.

## SECTION 224 - W

*[For HCD 1 & 2, DSA/AC] WALK* is a surfaced pedestrian way not located contiguous to a street used by the public. (See definition for “sidewalk.”)

*[For DSA/AC] WHEELCHAIR* is a chair mounted on wheels to be propelled by its occupant manually or with the aid of electric power, of a size and configuration conforming to the recognized standard models of the trade.

**[For DSA/AC] WHEELCHAIR OCCUPANT OR WHEELCHAIR USER** is an individual who, due to a physical impairment or disability, utilizes a wheelchair for mobility.

**[For DSA/AC] WORKING LEVEL OR WORKING AREA** is a platform, walkway, runway, floor or similar area fixed with reference to the hazard. This does not include ladders or portable or temporary means used for access, repair or maintenance, provided such means are removed immediately upon completion of the work.

**[For HCD 2, DSA/AC] WORK STATION** is an area defined by equipment and/or work surfaces intended for use by employees only, and generally for one or a small number of employees at a time. Examples include ticket booths; the employee side of grocery store checkstands; the bartender area behind a bar; the employee side of snack bars, sales counters and public counters; guardhouses; toll booths, kiosk vending stands; lifeguard stations; maintenance equipment closets; counter and equipment areas in restaurant kitchens; file rooms; storage areas; etc.

**SECTION 225 - X**  
No definitions.

**SECTION 226 - Y**

**SECTION 227 – Z**

No definitions.

## Chapter 3 USE OR OCCUPANCY

### SECTION 301 – OCCUPANCY CLASSIFIED

Every building, whether existing or hereafter erected, shall be classified by the building official according to its use or the character of its occupancy, as set forth in Table 3-A, as a building of one of the following occupancy groups:

- Group A — Assembly (see Section 303.1.1)
- Group B — Business (see Section 304.1)
- Group C — *Organized Camp (See Section 431A)*
- Group E — Educational (See Section 305.1)
- Group F — Factory and Industrial (See Section 306.1)
- Group H — Hazardous (see Section 307.1)
- Group I — Institutional (see Section 308.1)
- Group M — Mercantile (see Section 309.1)
- Group R — Residential (see Section 310.1)
- Group S — Storage (see Section 311.1)
- Group U — Utility (see Section 312.1)

Any occupancy not mentioned specifically or about which there is any question shall be classified by the building official and included in the group that its use most nearly resembles, based on the existing or proposed fire and life hazard.

For changes in use, see Section 3405.

### SECTION 310 - REQUIREMENTS FOR GROUP R OCCUPANCIES

#### ***310.13 Access to Buildings and Facilities.***

***310.13.1 [FOR DSA/AC] General accessibility requirements can be found in Chapters 10, 11B and 30.***

### SECTION 311 - REQUIREMENTS FOR GROUP S OCCUPANCIES

#### **311.2 Construction, Height and Allowable Area.**

##### **3.11.2.3 Specific use provisions.**

**311.2.3.7 [For DSA/AC] Vehicle barriers to motor vehicle fuel dispensers.** *For protection of motor vehicle fuel dispensers mounted at grade, see Section 5201.5.1, Part 9, Title 24 (California Fire Code):*

**“5201.5.1 Protection of dispensers.** Dispensing devices shall be protected against physical damage from vehicles by mounting on a concrete island 6 inches (152.4 mm) or more in height or by other approved methods.”

## Chapter 10 MEANS OF EGRESS

*The following California section replaces the corresponding model code section for applications specified by law for the Department of Housing and Community Development and the Division of the State Architect/Access Compliance.*

**1003.3.1.3a Width and height [for HCD 1/AC, HCD 2, DSA/AC] of door size.** Every required exit doorway shall be of a size as to permit the installation of a door not less than 3 feet (914 mm) in width and not less than 6 feet 8 inches (2032 mm) in height. When installed in exit doorways, exit doors shall be capable of opening at least 90 degrees and shall be so mounted that the clear width of the exitway is not less than 32 inches (813 mm). In computing the exit width required by Section 1003.2.3, the net dimension of the exitway shall be used.

*The following California sections replacing the corresponding model code section for applications specified by law for the Department of Housing and Community Development and the Division of the State Architect/Access Compliance.*

**1003.3.1.6a [For DDSA/AC] Floor Level at Doors.** Regardless of the occupant load, there shall be a floor or landing on each side of a door.

**1003.3.1.6.1a [For HCD 1, DSA/AC w/o exceptions] Thresholds.** The floor or landing shall not be more than ½ inch (12.7 mm) lower than the threshold of the doorway.

*Change in level between ¼ inch (6 mm) and ½ inch (12.7 mm) shall be beveled with a slope no greater than 1 unit vertical to 2 units horizontal (50% slope). Changes in level greater than ½ inch (13 mm) shall be accomplished by means of a ramp.*

**NOTE:** See Section 1003.3.4.

**EXCEPTIONS:** 1. This section shall not be enforced retroactively.

2. At the primary entry door to dwelling units in covered multifamily buildings, with direct exterior access, outside landing surfaces constructed of impervious materials such as concrete, brick or flagstone, shall be no more than ½ inch (12.7 mm) below the floor level of the interior of the dwelling unit.

**1003.3.1.8 Type of lock or latch.** Regardless of the occupant load served, exit doors shall be openable from the inside without the use of a key or any special knowledge or effort.

**Exceptions:** 1. In Groups A, Division 3; B; F; M and S Occupancies and in all churches, key-locking hardware may be used on the main exit where the main exit consists of a single door or pair of doors where there is a readily visible, durable sign on or adjacent to the door stating, "THIS DOOR MUST REMAIN UNLOCKED DURING BUSINESS HOURS." *[for SFM] THIS DOOR TO REMAIN UNLOCKED WHENEVER THE BUILDING IS OCCUPIED.* The sign shall be in letters not less than 1 inch (25 mm) high on a contrasting background. When unlocked, the single door or both leaves of a pair of doors must be free to swing without operation of any latching device. The use of this exception may be revoked by the building official *[for HCD 1 &2] enforcing agency* for due cause.

2. Exit doors from individual dwelling units; *[for SFM] buildings or rooms;* Group R, Division 3 congregate residences; and guest rooms of Group R Occupancies having an occupant load of 10 or less may be provided with a night latch, dead bolt or security chain, provided such devices are openable from the inside without the use of a key or tool *[for SFM] or special knowledge or effort* and mounted a height not to exceed 48 inches (1219 mm) above the finished floor.

3. *[For SFM] Mental, penal or corrective institutions where supervisory personnel are continually on duty and effective provisions are made to remove occupants in case of fire or other emergency.*

*[For SFM, DA/AC] Bars, grilles, grates or similar devices placed over any required exit door shall be openable from the inside without the use of a key, tool, or any special knowledge or effort. Such bars, grilles, grates or similar devices shall be equipped with an approved release device for use by the fire department only on the exterior side for the purpose of fire department emergency access, when required by the authority having jurisdiction.*

Manually operated edge-or surface-mounted flush bolts and surface bolts or any other type of device that may be used to close or restrain the door other than by operation of the locking device shall not be used. Where exit doors are used in pairs and approved automatic flush bolts are used, the door leaf having the automatic flush bolts shall have no doorknob or surface-mounted hardware. The unlatching of any leaf shall not require more than one operation.

**EXCEPTIONS:** 1. Group R. Division 3 Occupancies.

Where a pair of doors serving a room not normally occupied is needed for the movement of equipment, manually operated edge-or surface-mounted bolts may be used.

*The following California sections replace the corresponding model code section for applications specified by law for the Department of Housing and Community Development and the Division of the State Architect/ Access Compliance.*

### **1003.3.3.6a Handrails**

**1003.3.3.6.1a [For HCD 1 w/exceptions; HCD 2 w/exceptions 1,2, 4 and 5; DSA/AC w/exceptions 2 & 3; HCD 1/AC w/exception 6] Required handrails.** Stairways shall have handrails on each side and every stairway required to be more than 88 inches (2235 mm) in width shall be provided with not less than one intermediate handrail for each 88 inches (2235 mm) of required width. Intermediate handrails shall be spaced approximately equally across with the entire width of the stairway.

- EXCEPTIONS:**
1. Stairways 44 inches (1118 mm) or less in width may have one handrail except that such stairways open on one or both sides shall have handrails provided on the open side or sides.
  2. Stairways serving one individual dwelling unit in Group R, Division 1 or 3 Occupancies may have one handrail, except that stairways open on one or both sides shall have handrails on the open side or sides.
  3. Private stairways 30 inches (762 mm) or less in height may have handrails on one side only.
  4. Stairways having three risers or less and stairways giving access to portable work stands less than 30 inches (762 mm) high are not required to have handrails.
  5. Stairways less than 30 inches (762 mm) in width are permitted to have handrails on one side only.
  6. The provisions of Section 1003.3.3.6.1a shall not apply to existing, covered multifamily buildings.

**1003.3.4.4 Landings.** Ramps having slopes steeper than 1 unit vertical in 20 units horizontal (5% slope) shall have landings at the top and bottom, and at least one intermediate landing shall be provided for each 5 feet (1524 mm) of vertical rise measured between the horizontal planes of adjacent landings. Top landings and intermediate landings shall have a dimension measured in the direction of ramp run of not less than 5 feet (1524 mm). Landings at the bottom of ramps shall have a dimension in the direction of ramp run of not less than 6 feet (1829 mm).

Doors in any position shall not reduce the minimum dimension of the landing to less than 42 inches (1067 mm) and shall not reduce the required width by more than 7 inches (178 mm) [for DSA/AC] 3 inches (76 mm) when fully open.

Where ramp access is provided to comply with the requirements of Chapter 11 and a door swings over a landing, the landing shall extend at least 24 inches (610 mm) beyond the latch edge of the door, measured parallel to the door in the closed position, and shall have a length measured in the direction of travel through the doorway of not less than 5 feet (1524 mm).

## Chapter 11A

# HOUSING ACCESSIBILITY

### Section 1101A [FOR HCD 1] — SCOPE

**1101A.1 General.** *Buildings or portions of buildings shall be accessible to persons with disabilities as required by this chapter.*

### Section 1102A [FOR HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] — DEFINITIONS

*For the purpose of this chapter, certain terms are defined as follows:*

**1102A.1–ACCESSIBLE** *for covered multifamily dwellings is the public– or common–use areas of the building that can be approached, entered and used by individuals with physical disabilities. The phrase “readily accessible to and usable by” is synonymous with accessible.*

**ACCESSIBLE ROUTE OF TRAVEL** *is a continuous unobstructed path connecting all accessible elements and spaces in an accessible building or facility that can be negotiated by a person with a severe disability using a wheelchair, and that is also safe for and usable by persons with other disabilities.*

**ACCESSIBILITY** *is the combination of various elements in a building or area, which allows access, circulation and the full use of the building and facilities by persons with physical disabilities.*

**ADAPTABLE DWELLING UNIT** *is a dwelling unit in a building with a building entrance on an accessible route designed in such a manner that the public– and common–use areas are readily accessible to and usable by disabled persons, and all doors are designed sufficiently wide to allow passage into and within all premises by physically disabled persons in wheelchairs as required by this code.*

**ASSISTIVE DEVICE** *is an aid, tool or instrument used by persons with disabilities to assist in activities of daily living. Examples of assistive devices include tongs, knob–turners and oven–rack pusher/pullers.*

**1102A.2–BATHROOM** *is, for the purposes of this chapter, a room, which includes a water closet (toilet), lavatory (sink), and/or a bathtub and/or a shower. It does not include single–fixture facilities or those with only a water closet and lavatory. It does include a compartmented bathroom. A compartmented bathroom is one in which the fixtures are distributed among interconnected rooms. A compartmented bathroom is considered a single unit and is subject to the requirements for bathrooms for disabled persons.*



**BUILDING ENTRANCE ON AN ACCESSIBLE ROUTE** is an accessible entrance to a building that is connected by an accessible route to public transportation stops, to parking or passenger loading zones, or to public streets or sidewalks, if available.

**1102A.3–COMMON–USE AREAS** for covered multifamily dwellings are rooms, spaces or elements inside or outside of a building that are made available for the use of residents of a building or the guests thereof. These areas include, but are not limited to, hallways, lounges, lobbies, laundry rooms, refuse rooms, mail rooms, recreational areas and passageways between buildings.

**COVERED MULTIFAMILY DWELLINGS** are all dwelling units in buildings consisting of three or more privately funded dwelling units if such buildings have one or more elevators; and all ground-floor dwelling units in other buildings consisting of three or more dwelling units. Dwelling units within a single structure separated by firewalls do not constitute separate buildings.

**CURB CUT** is an interruption of a curb at a pedestrian way, which separates surfaces that are substantially at the same elevation.

**CURB RAMP** is a sloping pedestrian way, intended for pedestrian traffic, which provides access between a walk or sidewalk to a surface located above or below an adjacent curb face.

**1102A.4–DWELLING UNIT** is a single unit of residence for a household of one or more persons. Examples of dwelling units covered by these regulations include condominiums, an apartment unit within an apartment building, and other types of dwellings in which sleeping accommodations are provided but toileting or cooking facilities are shared by occupants of more than one room or portion of the dwelling. Examples of the latter include dormitory rooms and sleeping accommodations in shelters intended for occupancy as residences for homeless persons.

**1102A.5–E** (No definitions)

**1102A.6–F** (No definitions)

**1102A.7–GROUND FLOOR** is the floor of a building with a building entrance on an accessible route. A building may have one or more ground floors. Where the first floor containing dwelling units in a building is above grade, all units on that floor must be served by a building entrance on an accessible route. This floor will be considered to be a ground floor.

**1102A.8–HANDRAIL** is a device to be used as a hand hold.

**1102A.9–I** (No definitions)

**1102A.10–J** (No definitions)

**1102A.11–KICK PLATE** is an abrasion-resistant plate affixed to the bottom portion of a door to prevent a trap condition and protect its surface.

**1102A.12–LIFT, SPECIAL ACCESS.** See “special access lifts.”

**1102A.13–MULTISTORY DWELLING UNIT** is a dwelling unit with finished living space located on one floor and the floor or floors immediately above or below it.

**1102A.14–NEWLY CONSTRUCTED** is a building that has never before been used or occupied for any purpose.

**NOSE, NOSING,** is that portion of a tread.

**1102A.15–OPEN RISER** is the air space between a tread projecting beyond the face of the riser immediately below.

**1102A.16–PERSON WITH DISABILITY** is an individual who has a physical impairment, including impaired sensory, manual or speaking abilities, that results in a functional limitation in gaining access to and using a building or facility.

**PERSONS WITH PHYSICAL DISABILITIES** means, as with respect to a person, a physical or mental impairment which substantially limits one or more major life activities, a record of such an impairment, or being regarded as having such an impairment. This term does not include current, illegal use of or addiction to a controlled substance. For purposes of these guidelines, an individual shall not be considered to have a physical disability solely because that individual is a transvestite. As used in this definition “physical or mental impairment” includes:

Impairments which affect ambulation due to cerebral palsy, poliomyelitis, spinal cord injury, amputation, arthritis, cardiac and pulmonary conditions, and other conditions or diseases which reduce mobility, including aging. Any physiological disorder or condition, cosmetic disfigurement, or anatomical loss affecting one or more of the following body systems: neurological; musculoskeletal; special sense organs; respiratory, including speech organs; cardiovascular; reproductive; digestive; genito-urinary; hemic and lymphatic; skin; and endocrine; or

Any mental or psychological disorder, such as mental retardation, organic brain syndrome, emotional or mental illness, and specific learning disabilities. The term “physical or mental impairment” includes, but is not limited to, such diseases and conditions as orthopedic, visual, speech and hearing impairments; cerebral palsy; autism; epilepsy; muscular dystrophy; multiple sclerosis; cancer; heart disease; diabetes; human immunodeficiency virus infection; mental retardation; emotional illness; drug addiction (other than addiction caused by current, illegal use of a controlled substance) and alcoholism. These guidelines are designed to make units accessible or adaptable for people with physical disabilities.

*“Major life activities” means functions such as caring for one’s self, performing manual tasks, walking, seeing, hearing, speaking, breathing, learning and working.*

*“Has a record of such an impairment” means the person has a history of, or has been misclassified as having, a mental or physical impairment that substantially limits one or more major life activities.*

*“Is regarded as having an impairment” means:*

*The person has a physical or mental impairment that does not substantially limit one or more major life activities but that is treated by another person as constituting such a limitation:*

*The person has a physical or mental impairment that substantially limits one or more major life activities only as a result of the attitudes of others toward such impairment; or*

*The person has none of the impairments defined in Section 1102A.16–P but is treated by another person as having such impairment.*

**POWDER ROOM** is a room containing only a water closet (toilet) and lavatory (sink).

**PRIMARY ENTRY** is the principal entrance through which most people enter the building, as designated by the building official.

**PRIMARY ENTRY LEVEL** is the floor or level of the building on which the primary entry is located.

**PUBLIC–USE AREAS** are interior or exterior rooms or spaces of a building that are made available to the general public. Public use may be provided at a building that is privately or publicly owned.

**1102A.17–Q** (No definitions)

**1102A.18–RAMP.** See “curb ramp.”

**RISER** is the vertical distance from the top of a tread to the top of the next higher tread.

**1102A.19–SLOPE** is, for the purpose of privately funded covered multifamily buildings of three or more dwelling units, the relative steepness of the land between two points and is calculated as follows: The horizontal distance and elevation change between the two points (e.g., an entrance and a passenger loading zone) are determined from a topographical map. The difference in elevation is divided by the distance and the resulting fraction is multiplied by 100 to obtain the percentage. For example, if a principal entrance is 10 feet (3048 mm) from a passenger loading zone, and the principal entrance is raised 1 foot (305 mm) higher than the passenger loading zone, then the slope is  $\frac{1}{10} \times 100 = 10$  percent.

**STAIR RAILING** is a vertical barrier constructed along the open side or sides of stairways and as intermediate stair rails where required on wide stairways.

**1102A.20–TREAD** is the horizontal member of a step.

**TREAD DEPTH** is the horizontal distance from front to back of tread, including nosing when used.

**TREAD RUN** is the horizontal distance from the leading edge of a tread to the leading edge of an adjacent tread.

**TOWNHOUSE** is a multistory dwelling unit.

**1102A.21–U** (No definitions)

**1102A.22–VEHICULAR OR PEDESTRIAN ARRIVAL POINTS** are public or resident parking areas, public transportation stops, passenger loading zones, and public streets or sidewalks.

**1102A.23–WHEELCHAIR** is a chair mounted on wheels to be propelled by its occupant manually or with the aid of electric power, of a size and configuration conforming to the recognized standard models of the trade.

**WHEELCHAIR OCCUPANT OR WHEELCHAIR USER** is an individual who, due to a physical impairment or disability, utilizes a wheelchair for mobility.

**1102A.24–X** (No definitions)

**1102A.25–Y** (No definitions)

**1102A.26–Z** (No definitions)

**Section 1103A [FOR HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] — BUILDING ACCESSIBILITY**

**1103A.1** *Where Required.*

**1103A.1.1 General.** Accessibility to buildings or portions of buildings shall be provided for all occupancy classifications except as modified by this chapter.

**Section 1104A [FOR HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] — GROUP M OCCUPANCIES**

Group M, Division 1 private garages which are accessory to dwelling units required to be adaptable shall be accessible.

**EXCEPTION:** A private garage which serves a privately funded single dwelling unit is an accessible garage if a person with a disability can exit the dwelling unit's accessible entry door and enter the garage from the driveway.

**Section 1105A [FOR HCD 1/AC] — GROUP R OCCUPANCIES**

In California, Group R Occupancies shall be accessible as provided in this chapter. Public-use and common-use areas serving adaptable dwelling units shall be accessible.

**EXCEPTION:** Multistory dwelling units in nonelevator buildings are not subject to these requirements because, in such cases, there is no ground-floor unit.

**Section 1106A [FOR HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] — DOOR SIGNAL DEVICES**

Every primary entrance to a dwelling unit in buildings containing three or more dwelling units shall be provided with a door buzzer, bell, chime or equivalent installation, mounted a maximum of 48 inches (1219 mm) above the floor, connected to permanent wiring.

**Section 1107A [FOR HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] — DESIGN AND CONSTRUCTION**

**1107A.1** [For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] **General.** In California, when accessibility is required, it shall be designed and constructed as provided in Chapters 11A and 30 of this building code with California amendments.

**1107A.2** [For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] **Accessible Route of Travel.**

**1107A.2.1[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC]** When a building, or portion of a building, is required to be accessible or adaptable, an accessible route of travel shall be provided to all portions of the building, to accessible building entrances and between the building and the public way. Except within an individual dwelling unit, an accessible route of travel shall not pass through kitchens, storage rooms, restrooms, closets or other spaces used for similar purposes. At least one accessible route within the boundary of the site shall be provided from public transportation stops, accessible parking and accessible passenger loading zones, and public streets or sidewalks to the accessible building entrance they serve. The accessible route shall, to the maximum extent feasible, coincide with the route for the general public. At least one accessible route shall connect accessible buildings, facilities, elements and spaces that are on the same site. At least one accessible route shall connect accessible building or facility entrances with all accessible spaces and elements and with all accessible dwelling units within the building or facility. An accessible route shall connect at least one accessible entrance of each accessible dwelling unit with those exterior and interior spaces and facilities that serve the accessible dwelling unit.

**1107A.3[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC]** Where more than one route of travel is provided, all routes shall be accessible.

**EXCEPTION:** Where an elevator is provided for vertical access, only one elevator is required. Where more than one elevator is provided, all elevators shall be accessible.

**1107A.4[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC]** All walks, halls, corridors, aisles and other spaces that are part of an accessible route shall provide a minimum clear width of 48 inches (1219 mm), except at doors.

**EXCEPTION:** Privately funded covered multifamily dwelling units shall provide a minimum clear width of 36 inches (914 mm), except at doors.

**1107A.5[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC]** Sidewalks shall be a minimum of 48 inches (1219 mm) in clear width.

**EXCEPTION:** For sidewalks serving individual dwelling units in privately funded covered multifamily buildings, see Section 1120A.6.

**1107A.6[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC]** When the first floor containing dwelling units is a floor above grade, all units must be served by an accessible route.

**EXCEPTION:** In multistory dwelling units, i.e., townhouse-type construction, access is not required for buildings without elevators.

*In multistory dwelling units in buildings with elevators, the story of the unit that is served by the building elevator is the primary entry to the unit. The primary floor shall contain a bathroom or powder room usable to a person in a wheelchair.*

**1107A.7[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC]** Access shall be provided to elements listed in Section 1104B.4.3, participation areas.

**1107A.8[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC]** Walks, halls, corridors, passageways, aisles or other circulation spaces shall have 80 inches (2032 mm) minimum clear headroom. If vertical clearance of an area adjoining an accessible route is reduced to less than 80 inches (2032 mm) nominal dimension, a guardrail or other barrier having its leading edge at or below 27 inches (686 mm) above the finished floor shall be provided.

**1107A.9[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC]** If an accessible route has changes in level greater than 1/2 inch (12.7 mm), then a curb ramp, ramp, elevator or platform lift shall be provided. Stairs shall not be part of an accessible route.

**1107A.10[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC]** Accessible routes serving any accessible space or element shall also serve as a means of egress for emergencies or connect to an accessible place of refuge. Such accessible routes and places of refuge shall comply with the requirements established by the enforcement authority having jurisdiction.

**1107A.11[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] Primary Entry Access.** Covered multifamily buildings shall comply with Section 1119A.

**1107A.12[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] Separate Ground-floor Unit Entrances.** When a ground-floor unit of a building has a separate entrance, each such ground-floor unit shall be served by an accessible route, except for any unit where the terrain or unusual characteristics of the site prohibit the provision of an accessible route to the entrance of that unit.

**1107A.13[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] Multiple Entrances.** Only one entrance to privately funded multifamily buildings is required to be accessible to any one ground floor of a building, except in cases where an individual dwelling unit has a separate exterior entrance or where the building contains clusters of dwelling units with each cluster sharing a different exterior entrance. In these cases, more than one entrance may be required to be accessible, as determined by analysis of the site. In every case, the accessible entrance shall be on an accessible route to the covered dwelling units it serves.

**1107A.14[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] Site Impracticability.** Covered multifamily dwellings with elevators shall be designed and constructed to provide at least one accessible entrance on an accessible route, regardless of terrain or unusual characteristics of the site. Covered multifamily dwellings without elevators shall be designed and constructed to provide at least one accessible entrance on an accessible route unless terrain or unusual characteristics of the site prevent an accessible route based on the conditions listed below.

**1107A.15[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC]** Regardless of site considerations described in Section 1119A, an accessible entrance on an accessible route is practical when there is an elevator connecting the parking area with the dwelling units on a ground floor. (In this case, those dwelling units on the ground floor served by an elevator, and at least one of each type of public– and common–use areas, would be subject to these requirements.)

**1107A.16[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC]** If the building elevator is provided as a means of access to dwelling units other than dwelling units on a ground floor, then the building is an elevator building which is a covered multifamily dwelling, and the elevator in that building must provide accessibility to all dwelling units in the building, regardless of the slope of the natural terrain; or

**1107A.17[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC]** An elevated walkway is planned between a building entrance and a vehicular or pedestrian arrival point, and the planned walkway has a slope no greater than 10 percent (1 unit vertical in 10 units horizontal).

**1107A.18[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC]** If the slope of the finished grade between covered multifamily dwellings and a public– or common–use facility (including parking) exceeds 1 unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (8.33% slope), or where other physical barriers (natural or artificial) or legal restrictions, all of which are outside the control of the owner, prevent the installation of an accessible pedestrian route, an acceptable alternative is to provide access via a vehicular route, provided necessary site provisions such as parking spaces and curb ramps are provided at the public– or common–use facility.

**1107A.19[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] Signs.** See Section 1117A.3.

**1107A.20[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] Adaptable Dwelling Units.** Dwelling units shall be considered adaptable when they comply with the appropriate provisions of adaptability contained in Section 1120A and Chapter 10.

## **Section 1108A [FOR SFM & DSA/AC] — EGRESS AND AREAS OF REFUGE**

**1108A.1[For SFM & DSA/AC] Means of Egress.**



**1108A.1.1[For SFM & DSA/AC] General.** All required accessible spaces shall be provided with not less than one accessible means of egress. When more than one exit is required from any accessible space, each accessible portion of the space shall be served by not less than two accessible means of egress. The maximum travel distance from any accessible space to an area of refuge shall not exceed the travel distance set forth in Chapter 10.

Each accessible means of egress shall be continuous from each required accessible occupied area to a public way and shall include accessible routes, ramps, exit stairs, elevators, horizontal exits or smoke barriers.

**EXCEPTIONS:** 1. Areas for evacuation assistance are not required in buildings or facilities having a supervised automatic sprinkler system.

2. Areas for evacuation assistance are not required in alterations of existing buildings.

**NOTE:** This section is also adopted by the Division of the State Architect, Access Compliance, for buildings not regulated by the State Fire Marshal.

**1108A.2[For SFM & DSA/AC] Emergency Warning Systems/Accessibility Requirements** Emergency warning systems as part of the fire-alarm system shall be designed and installed in accordance with NFPA 72 as amended in Chapter 35.

## **Section 1109A [FOR HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] — FACILITY ACCESSIBILITY**

**1109A.1[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] General.** When buildings are required to be accessible, building facilities shall be accessible as provided in this section. Where specific floors of a building are required to be accessible, the requirements shall apply only to the facilities located on accessible floors. Doors and openings shall comply with the requirements of Section 1120A.

**EXCEPTION:** In privately funded covered multifamily dwelling units, except for primary entrance and required exits, doors and openings within units shall provide a minimum of 32 inches (813 mm) nominal clear space, measured between the face of the door and the stop, when the door is in the 90-degree open position to permit the passage of a disabled person in a wheelchair. A 34-inch (864 mm) door is acceptable. The nominal 32-inch (813 mm) clear opening provided by a standard 6-foot (1829 mm) sliding patio door assembly is acceptable. Site access to the primary entry shall be as provided for in this section.

**1109A.2[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] Bathing and Toilet Facilities.**

**1109A.2.1[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] Bathing facilities.** See Tables 1109A.2–1 and 1109A.2–2 for complying bathrooms.

**1109A.2.2 [For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] Only one bathroom in privately funded accessible dwelling units need comply with the requirements for the physically disabled.**

**1109A.2.3[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC]** *If a developer desires to provide requirements for the physically disabled in all bathrooms, use Table 1109A.2–1.*

**1109A.2.4[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC]** *If a developer desires to provide requirements for the physically disabled in only one bathroom, use Table 1109A.2–2.*

**1109A.3[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] Water Closets.** *Water closets in bathrooms required to be accessible shall conform to the provisions of Section 1502, California Plumbing Code, Title 24, Part 5, California Code of Regulations. The water closet shall be located in a space a minimum of 36 inches (914 mm) in clear width with 48 inches (1219 mm) minimum clear space provided in front of the water closet. This space may include maneuverable space under a lavatory, if provided, arranged so as not to impede access. The minimum height of water closet seats shall be 15 inches (381 mm) above the floor.*

**EXCEPTION:** *In privately funded multifamily dwelling units, the water closet may be located in a space 48 inches (1219 mm) in clear width with 36 inches (914 mm) of clear space provided in front of the water closet.*

**1109A.4[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] Lavatories, Mirrors and Towel Fixtures.** *At least one accessible lavatory shall be provided within any toilet facility. Where mirrors and towel fixtures are provided at least one of each shall be accessible.*

**1109A.5[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] Fixtures in Adaptable Dwelling Units.** *Grab bars need not be installed in either a bathing or toilet facility within an adaptable dwelling unit provided all structural reinforcements for future grab bar installation are provided in the appropriate locations in the adjoining walls. The reinforcement shall be of sufficient length to permit the installation of grab bars as specified. The reinforced wall shall be capable of supporting a load of at least 250 pounds (1112 N).*

**1109A.6[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] Toilet.** *Where the toilet is not placed adjacent to a sidewall, the bathroom shall have provisions for installation of floor–mounted, foldaway or similar alternative grab bars. Where the powder room (a room with a toilet and sink) is the only toilet facility located on an accessible level of a multistory dwelling unit, it shall comply with the requirement for reinforced walls for grab bars.*

*Where the toilet is placed adjacent to a sidewall, reinforcement shall be installed on both sides or one side and the back. If reinforcement is installed at the back it shall be installed between 32 inches (813 mm) and 38 inches (965 mm) above the floor. The grab bar reinforcement shall be a minimum of 6 inches (152 mm) nominal in height. The backing shall be a minimum of 40 inches (1016 mm) in length.*

*Reinforcement installed at the side of the toilet shall be installed 32 inches to 38 inches (813 mm to 965 mm) above the floor. The reinforcement shall be installed a maximum of 12 inches (305 mm) from the rear wall and shall extend a minimum of 26 inches (660 mm) in front of the water closet stool. The grab bar reinforcement shall be a minimum of 6 inches (152 mm) nominal in height.*

**1109A.7[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] Bathtub.** *A bathtub may be installed without surrounding walls provided reinforced areas are provided for installation of floor-mounted grab bars.*

*Where a tub is installed with surrounding walls, grab bar reinforcement shall be installed on each end of the bathtub, 32 inches to 38 inches (813 mm to 965 mm) above the floor, extending a minimum of 24 inches (610 mm) aligned with the front edge of the bathtub toward the back wall of the bathtub. The grab bar reinforcement shall be a minimum of 6 inches (152 mm) nominal in height.*

*Grab bar reinforcement shall be installed on the back wall of the bathtub commencing a maximum of 6 inches (152 mm) above the bathtub rim and extending upward to a point a minimum of 38 inches (965 mm) above the floor. The grab bar backing shall be installed horizontally a length to permit the installation of a 48-inch (1219 mm) grab bar with each end a maximum of 6 inches (152 mm) from the end walls of the bathtub. The grab bar reinforcement shall be a minimum of 6 inches (152 mm) nominal in height.*

**1109A.8[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] Shower stalls.** *Glass-walled shower stalls shall provide reinforcement for installation of floor-mounted grab bars. Reinforcement for installation of ceiling-mounted grab bars is permitted.*

*Grab bar reinforcement shall be installed continuous in the walls of adaptable showers 32 inches to 38 inches (813 mm to 965 mm) above the floor. The grab bar reinforcement shall be a minimum of 6 inches (152 mm) nominal in height.*

**TABLE 1109A.2-1**  
**Use this table when all bathrooms are complying bathrooms.**

1.	Bathroom entrance doorways shall have an 18-inch (457 mm) clear space to the side of the strike edge of the door on the swing side of the door.
2.	Sufficient maneuvering space shall be provided for a person using a wheelchair or other mobility aid to enter and close the door, use the fixtures, reopen the door and exit. Doors may swing into the clear space at any fixture if the maneuvering space is provided. Maneuvering spaces may include any kneespace or toespace available below bathroom fixtures.
3.	Where the door swings into the bathroom, there shall be a clear space [approximately 30 inches by 48 inches (762 mm by 1219 mm)] within the room to position a wheelchair or other mobility aid clear of the path of the door as it is closed and to permit use of fixtures.
4.	There shall be a minimum clear space 48 inches parallel by 30 inches perpendicular (1219 mm by 762 mm) to the side of a bathtub or bathtub–shower combination (measured from the foot of the bathtub) to provide for the maneuvering of a wheelchair and transfer to and from the bathing facilities, which may include the maneuverable area under the lavatory. <b>EXCEPTION:</b> Prior to July 1, 1994, condominium dwelling units may provide a minimum clear space 30 inches parallel by 48 inches perpendicular (762 mm by 1219 mm) to the side of a bathtub or bathtub–shower combination.
4.1.	A shower spray unit is not required in bathtubs.
5.	When a shower stall is provided in a privately funded accessible dwelling unit, at least one shower stall shall measure at least 42 inches wide by 48 inches (1067 mm by 1219 mm) deep with an entrance opening of at least 36 inches (914 mm). When a threshold (a recessed drop) is used, it shall be a maximum of 1/2 inch (12.7 mm) in height and have a beveled or sloped angle not exceeding 45 degrees from the horizontal. Maximum slope of the shower floor shall be 1/2 inch (12.7 mm) per foot in any direction and shall slope toward the rear to a drain located within 6 inches (152 mm) of the rear wall. The floor surfaces shall be of Carborundum or grit-faced tile or of material providing equivalent slip resistance. Doors and panels of shower and bathtub enclosures shall be substantially constructed from approved, shatter-resistant materials. Hinged shower doors shall open outward. Glazing used in doors and panels of shower and bathtub enclosures shall be fully tempered, laminated safety glass or approved plastic. When glass is used, it shall have minimum thickness of not less than 1/8 inch (3 mm) when fully tempered, or 1/4 inch (6 mm) when laminated, and shall pass the test requirement of UBC Standard 24–2. Plastics used in doors and panels of showers and bathtub enclosures shall be of a shatter-resistant type.
6.	Walls must be reinforced to support grab bars as required by Section 1109A.5.
7.	Space requirements for the installation of water closets shall be as specified in Section 1109A.3.
8.	Structural reinforcements for future grab bar installation shall be as specified in Section 1109A.5.

If Table 1109A.2–2 is used, all other bathrooms and powder rooms within the dwelling unit shall be on an accessible route with usable entry doors.

**TABLE 1109A.2-2**

***Use this table when only one complying bathroom is provided.***

1.	Bathroom entrance doorways shall have an 18-inch (457 mm) clear space to the side of the strike edge of the door on the swing side of the door.
2.	Sufficient maneuvering space shall be provided for a person using a wheelchair or other mobility aid to enter and close the door, use the fixtures, reopen the door and exit. Doors may swing into the clear space at any fixture if the maneuvering space is provided. Maneuvering spaces may include any kneespace or toespace available below bathroom fixtures.
3.	Where the door swings into the bathroom, there shall be a clear space [approximately 30 inches by 48 inches (762 mm by 1219 mm)] within the room to position a wheelchair or other mobility aid clear of the path of the door as it is closed and to permit use of fixtures.
4.	Where the door swings out, a clear space is provided within the bathroom for a person using a wheelchair or other mobility aid to position the wheelchair such that the person is allowed use of fixtures. There also shall be clear space to allow persons using wheelchairs to reopen the door to exit.
5.	There shall be a minimum clear space 48 inches parallel by 30 inches perpendicular (1219 mm by 762 mm) to the side of a bathtub or bathtub–shower combination (measured from the foot of the bathtub) to provide for the maneuvering of a wheelchair and transfer to and from the bathing facilities, which may include the maneuverable area under the lavatory.
5.1.	A shower spray unit is not required in bathtubs.
6.	When a shower stall is provided in a privately funded accessible dwelling unit, at least one shower stall shall measure at least 42 inches wide by 48 inches deep (1067 mm by 1219 mm) with an entrance opening of at least 36 inches (914 mm). When a threshold (a recessed drop) is used, it shall be a maximum of 1/2 inch (12.7 mm) in height and have a beveled or sloped angle not exceeding 45 percent from the horizontal. Maximum slope of the shower floor shall be 1/2 inch (12.7 mm) per foot in any direction and shall slope toward the rear to a drain located within 6 inches (152 mm) of the rear wall. The floor surfaces shall be of Carborundum or grit-faced tile or of material providing equivalent slip resistance. Doors and panels of shower and bathtub enclosures shall be substantially constructed from approved, shatter-resistant materials. Hinged shower doors shall open outward. Glazing used in doors and panels of shower and bathtub enclosures shall be fully tempered, laminated safety glass or approved plastic. When glass is used, it shall have minimum thickness of not less than 1/8 inch (3 mm) when fully tempered, or 1/4 inch (6 mm) when laminated, and shall pass the test requirements of UBC Standard 24–2. Plastics used in doors and panels of showers and bathtub enclosures shall be of a shatter-resistant type.
7.	Walls must be reinforced to support grab bars as required by Section 1109A.5.
8.	Space requirements for the installation of water closets shall be as specified in Section 1109A.3.
9.	Structural reinforcements for future grab bar installation shall be as specified in Section 1109A.5.
10.	When both tub and shower fixtures are provided in the bathroom, at least one shall be made accessible. When two or more lavatories in a bathroom are provided, at least one shall be made accessible.
11.	Toilets shall be located within bathrooms in a manner that permits a grab bar to be installed on one side of the fixture. In locations where toilets are adjacent to walls or bathtubs, the center line of the fixture shall be a minimum of 1 foot 6 inches (457 mm) from the obstacle. The other (nongrab bar) side of the toilet fixture shall be a minimum of 1 foot 6 inches (457 mm) from the finished surface of adjoining walls, vanities or from the edge of a lavatory.
12.	Vanities and lavatories shall be installed with the center line of the fixture a minimum of 1 foot 6 inches (457 mm) horizontally from an adjoining wall or fixture. The top of the fixture rim shall be a maximum of 2 feet 10 inches (864 mm) above the finished floor. If kneespace is provided below the vanity, the bottom of the apron shall be at least 2 feet 5 inches (737 mm) above the floor. If provided, full kneespace shall be at least 1 foot 5 inches (432 mm) deep. Cabinets under lavatories are acceptable provided the bathroom has space to allow a parallel approach by a person in a wheelchair. If parallel approach is not possible within the space, any cabinets provided would have to be removable to afford the necessary knee clearance for forward approach.

## **Section 1110A [FOR HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] — ELEVATORS AND SPECIAL ACCESS (WHEELCHAIR) LIFTS**

**1110A.1 [For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] Elevators.** *Elevators shall be accessible.*

**EXCEPTION:** *Private elevators serving only one dwelling unit.*

*Elevators required to be accessible shall be designed and constructed to comply with Section 3003.4.17.*

**1110A.2 [For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] Special Access (Wheelchair) Lifts.** *Special access wheelchair lifts may be provided between levels, in lieu of passenger elevators, when the vertical distance between landings, as well as the structural design and safeguards are as allowed by the State of California, the Department of Industrial Relations, Division of Occupational Safety and Health, and any applicable safety regulations of other administrative authorities having jurisdiction.*

*If lifts are provided, they shall be designed and constructed to facilitate unassisted entry, operation, and exit from the lift, and shall comply with restrictions and enhancements of this section in conjunction with Section 3093 to 3094.5, Part 7 of the California Code of Regulations.*

## **Section 1111A [FOR HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] — TELEPHONES**

*On floors where public telephones are provided, at least one telephone shall be accessible. On any floor where two or more banks of multiple telephones are provided, at least one telephone in each bank shall be accessible.*

**1111A.1[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] General.** *If public telephones are provided, they shall comply with this section.*

**1111A.2[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] Clear Floor Ground Space.** *A clear floor or ground space at least 30 inches by 48 inches (762 mm by 1219 mm) that allows either a forward or parallel approach by a person using a wheelchair shall be provided at telephones.*

**1111A.3[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] Size and Approach.** *The minimum clear floor ground space required to accommodate a single, stationary wheelchair and occupant is 30 inches by 48 inches (762 mm by 1219 mm). The minimum clear floor or ground space for wheelchairs may be positioned for forward or parallel approach to an object. Clear floor or ground space for wheelchairs may be part of the knee space required under some objects.*

**1111A.4[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] Relationship of Maneuvering Clearances to Wheelchair Spaces.** *One full unobstructed side of the clear floor or ground space for a wheelchair shall adjoin another wheelchair clear floor space. If a clear floor space is located in an alcove or otherwise confined on all or part of three sides, additional maneuvering clearances shall be provided.*

**1111A.5[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] Floor Surfaces of Wheelchair Spaces.** *Floor surfaces of wheelchair spaces shall conform to the figures in Chapter 11B. Bases, enclosures and fixed seats shall not impede approaches to telephones by people who use wheelchairs.*

**1111A.6[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] Mounting height.** *The highest operable part of the telephone shall be within the reach ranges specified in the figures in Chapter 11B. Telephones mounted diagonally in a corner that require wheelchair users to reach diagonally shall have the highest operable part no higher than 54 inches (1372 mm) above the floor.*

**1111A.7[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] Enclosures.** *If telephone enclosures are provided, they may overhang the clear floor space required in Sections 1111A.2, 1111A.3 and 1111A.4 with the following limits:*

**1111A.7.1[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] Side reach possible.** *The overhang shall be no greater than 19 inches (483 mm). The height of the lowest overhanging part shall be equal to or greater than 27 inches (686 mm).*

**1111A.7.2[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] Full-height enclosures.** *Entrances to full-height enclosures shall be 30 inches (762 mm) minimum.*

**1111A.7.3[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] Forward reach required.** *If the overhang is greater than 12 inches (305 mm), then the clear width of the enclosure shall be 30 inches (762 mm) minimum; if the clear width of the enclosure is less than 30 inches (762 mm), then the height of the lowest overhanging part shall be equal to or greater than 27 inches (686 mm).*

**1111A.8[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] Equipment for Hearing Impaired People.** *Telephones shall be equipped with a receiver that generates a magnetic field in the area of the receiver cap. A reasonable number of the public telephones provided, but always at least one on each floor or in each bank, whichever is more, in a building or facility, shall be equipped with a volume control. Such telephones shall be capable of a minimum of 12 dBA and a maximum of 18 dBA above normal. If an automatic reset is provided, 18 dBA may be exceeded. Public telephones with volume control shall be hearing aid compatible and shall be identified by a sign containing a depiction of a telephone handset with radiating sound waves.*

**1111A.9[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] Text telephones.** *If a total of four or more public pay telephones are provided at the interior and exterior of a site, and if at least one of the total is in an interior location, then at least one interior public text telephone shall be provided.*

**1111A.10[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] Controls.** *Telephones shall have push–button controls where service for such equipment is available.*

**1111A.11[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] Cord Length.** *The cord from the telephone to the handset shall be at least 29 inches (737 mm) long.*

**1111A.12[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] Telephone Books.** *If telephone books are provided, they shall be located in a position that complies with the reach ranges in the figures in Chapter 11B.*

### **Section 1112A [FOR HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] — KITCHENS**

*Kitchens within adaptable dwelling units shall be accessible. Kitchens in covered multifamily dwelling units that are required to provide access to persons with physical disabilities shall have a clear floor space at least 30 inches by 48 inches (762 mm by 1219 mm) that allows a parallel approach by a person in a wheelchair at the range or cooktop and either a parallel or forward approach at the oven, dishwasher, refrigerator/freezer and trash compactor.*

**EXCEPTION:** *In privately funded multifamily dwelling units containing U-shaped kitchens with a range or cooktop at the base of the U, a 60–inch (1524 mm) clear width between cabinet fronts, appliances or fixtures shall be provided to allow a parallel approach, or base cabinets shall be removable at that location to a height of 27 inches (686 mm) above the floor to allow knee space for a forward approach. Base cabinets directly under kitchen sink counter area, including toeboard and shelving, shall be removable, without the use of special tools or knowledge, to provide clearance for a wheelchair. Finished flooring shall be installed on the floor beneath such countertop. A minimum clear space of 48 inches (1219 mm) shall be provided for all other kitchen designs.*

**1112A.1[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] Kitchen Sink Faucet Controls.** *Kitchen sink faucet controls shall comply with the provisions of Section 1508, California Plumbing Code, Title 24, Part 5, California Code of Regulations.*



**1112A.2[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] Countertops.** *A minimum linear length of 30 inches (762 mm) of countertop shall be provided for the kitchen sink, and a minimum linear length of 30 inches (762 mm) of countertop shall be provided for a work surface, both of which shall be designed to enable repositioning to a minimum height of 28 inches (711 mm). The sink and work surface may be a single integral unit, or be separate components. The base cabinets directly under sink and work surface counter areas which are designed for repositioning shall be removable to provide clearance for a wheelchair.*

**EXCEPTIONS:** *1. Only 5 percent of the privately funded apartment house dwelling units that are required to be accessible are required to comply with the requirements for repositionable countertops. All other privately funded covered multifamily dwelling units are exempt.*

*2. Stone, cultured stone and tiled countertops may be used without meeting the repositioning requirements.*

*3. In privately funded apartment houses, two 15-inch (381 mm) minimum width breadboards may be provided in lieu of the required 30 inches (762 mm) of countertop work surface.*

*The sides and back of adjacent cabinets, which may become exposed to moisture or food handling when a countertop is lowered, shall be constructed of durable, nonabsorbent materials appropriate for such uses. Finished flooring shall be installed on the floor beneath such countertop.*

**1112A.3[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] Lower shelving.** *Lower shelving and/or drawer space shall be provided in the kitchen at a height of no more than 48 inches (1219 mm).*

**1112A.4[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] Base cabinets.** *In dwelling units required to be accessible, base cabinets directly under kitchen sink counter area, including toeboard and shelving, shall be removable without the use of specialized tools or specialized knowledge to provide clearance for a wheelchair. Finished flooring shall be provided on the floor beneath the countertop.*

### **Section 1113A [FOR HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] — SWIMMING POOLS**

*Swimming pools required to be accessible to persons with physical disabilities shall comply with the provisions of Chapter 11B.*

### **Section 1114A [FOR HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] — SIGNS**

*All accessible toilet and bathing facilities shall be identified by the international symbol of accessibility. Signs need not be provided for facilities within an adaptable dwelling unit, or within an accessible patient or guest room.*

**Section 1115A [FOR HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] — LAUNDRY ROOMS**

*If clothes–washing machines and clothes dryers are provided in covered multifamily buildings or dwelling units, at least one of each type of appliance shall be provided in each laundry area, except that laundry rooms serving multifamily dwellings are not required to have front–loading clothes washers. Where front–loading clothes washers are not provided, management shall provide assistive devices, on request, if necessary to permit a resident to use a top–loading clothes washer.*

**Section 1116A [FOR HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] — FLOORING**

*If carpet or carpet tile is used in a common–use area on a ground or floor surface, it shall have firm backing or no backing. The maximum pile height shall be  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm). Exposed edges of carpet shall be fastened to floor surfaces and have trim along the entire length of the exposed edge. Carpet edge trim shall comply with the requirements for changes in level.*

**Section 1117A [FOR HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] — EXTERIOR ROUTES OF TRAVEL**

**1117A.1[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] General.** *When more than one building or facility is located on a site, accessible routes of travel shall be provided between buildings and accessible site facilities. The accessible route of travel shall be the most practical direct route between accessible building entrances, accessible site facilities and the accessible entrance to the site.*

**1117A.2[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] Design and Construction.** *Use the provisions of this chapter.*

**1117A.3[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] Signs.** *At every primary public entrance and at every major junction along or leading to an accessible route of travel, there shall be a sign displaying the International Symbol of Accessibility. Signs shall indicate the direction to accessible building entrances and facilities.*

**1117A.4[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] Curb Ramps.**

**1117A.4.1[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] General.** *Curb ramps shall be constructed at each corner of street intersections and where a pedestrian way crosses a curb. The preferred and recommended location for curb ramps is in the center of the crosswalk of each street corner. Where it is necessary to locate a curb ramp in the center of the curb return and the street surfaces are marked to identify pedestrian crosswalks, the lower end of the curb ramp shall terminate within such crosswalk areas. Curb ramps do not require handrails.*

**1117A.4.2[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] Width of curb ramps.** *Curb ramps shall be a minimum of 4 feet (1219 mm) in width and shall lie, generally, in a single sloped plane, with a minimum of surface warping and cross slope.*

**1117A.4.3[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] Slope of curb ramps.** *The slope of curb ramps shall not exceed 1 unit vertical to 12 units horizontal (8.33% slope). Transitions from ramps to walks, gutters or streets shall be flush and free of abrupt changes, except that curb ramps shall comply with Section 1117A.4.5. The slope of the fanned or flared sides of curb ramps shall not exceed 1 unit vertical to 8 units horizontal (12.5% slope). If a curb ramp is located where pedestrians must walk across the ramp, then it shall have flared sides; the maximum slope of the flare shall be 1 unit vertical in 10 units horizontal (10% slope). Curb ramps with returned curbs may be used where pedestrians would not normally walk across the ramp.*

**1117A.4.4[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] Level landing.** *A level landing 4 feet (1219 mm) deep shall be provided at the upper end of each curb ramp over its full width to permit safe egress from the ramp surface, or the slope of the fanned or flared sides of the curb ramp shall not exceed 1 unit vertical to 12 units horizontal (8.33% slope).*

**1117A.4.5[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] Beveled lip.** *The lower end of each curb ramp shall have a 1/2-inch (13 mm) lip beveled at 45 degrees.*

**1117A.4.6[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] Finish.** *The surface of each curb ramp and its flared sides shall be stable, firm and slip-resistant and shall be of contrasting finish from that of the adjacent sidewalk.*

**1117A.4.7[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] Detectable warnings.** *A curb ramp shall have a detectable warning that extends the full width and depth of the curb ramp when the ramp slope is less than 1 unit vertical in 15 units horizontal (6.7% slope). Detectable warnings shall consist of raised truncated domes with a diameter of nominal 0.9 inch (22.86 mm), a height of nominal 0.2 inch (5.08 mm) and a center-to-center spacing of nominal 2.35 inches (59.7 mm) and shall contrast visually with adjoining surfaces, either light-on-dark or dark-on-light. Warning surfaces shall be of the color yellow conforming to Federal Color No. 33538, as shown in Table V of Standard No. 595A. Where the color value contrast between the yellow warning and the main walking surface is less than 70 percent, a 1-inch-wide (25 mm) black strip shall separate the yellow warning from the main walking surface. Contrast shall be determined by:*

*Contrast =  $[(B1-B2/B1) \times 100\%]$  where B1 = light reflectance value (LRV) of the lighter area and B2 = light reflectance value (LRV) of the darker area]. The material used to provide contrast shall be an integral part of the walking surface. The domes may be constructed in a variety of methods, including cast in place or stamped, or they may be part of a prefabricated surface treatment.*

**1117A.4.8[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] Obstructions.** *Curb ramps shall be located or protected to prevent their obstruction by parked cars. Built-up curb ramps shall be located so that they do not project into vehicular traffic lanes.*

**1117A.4.9[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] Diagonal curb ramps.** *If diagonal (or corner-type) curb ramps have returned curbs or other well-defined edges, such edges shall be parallel to the direction of pedestrian flow. The bottom of diagonal curb ramps shall have 48 inches (1219 mm) minimum clear space as shown in the figures in Chapter 11B. If diagonal curb ramps are provided at marked crossings, the 48-inch (1219 mm) clear space shall be within the markings (see figures in Chapter 11B). If diagonal curb ramps have flared sides, they shall also have at least a 24-inch-long (610 mm) segment of straight curb located on each side of the curb ramp and within the marked crossing (see figures in Chapter 11B).*

### **Section 1118A [FOR HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] — PARKING FACILITIES**

**1118A.1[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] Accessible Parking Required.** *Accessible parking spaces shall be located on the shortest possible accessible route of travel to an accessible building entrance. In facilities with multiple accessible building entrances with adjacent parking, accessible parking spaces shall be dispersed and located near the accessible entrances. When practical, the accessible route of travel shall not cross lanes for vehicular traffic. When crossing vehicle traffic lanes is necessary, the route of travel shall be designated and marked as a crosswalk.*

*Each lot or parking structure where parking is provided for clients, guests, employees or residents shall provide accessible parking as required by this section. In separate parking structures or lots that do not serve a particular building, parking spaces for physically disabled people shall be located on the shortest possible circulation route to an accessible pedestrian entrance of the parking facility.*

*If assigned parking is provided at privately funded multifamily building sites, designated accessible parking at the dwelling unit shall be provided on request of residents with physical disabilities on the same terms and with the full range of choices (e.g., surface parking or garage) provided for other residents, with accessible parking on a route accessible to wheelchairs for at least 2 percent of the covered dwelling units. Signage is not required. When visitor parking is provided, a minimum of 5 percent of parking shall provide access to grade-level entrances of multifamily dwellings and accessible parking at facilities (e.g., swimming pools) that serve accessible buildings. Visitor parking spaces shall be provided with signage. Such sign shall not be blocked from view by a vehicle parked in the space.*

**1118A.2[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] Parking Structures.** All entrances to and vertical clearances within parking structures shall have a minimum vertical clearance of 8 feet 2 inches (2489 mm) where required for accessibility to parking spaces for persons with physical disabilities.

**EXCEPTION:** Privately funded garages are exempt from the 8-foot 2-inch (2489 mm) minimum height requirement. Covered parking spaces and parking spaces in common areas shall provide a minimum of 8 feet 2 inches (2489 mm) vertical clearance.

**1118A.2.1[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] Passenger parking spaces** shall not be considered to be passenger loading zones.

**1118A.3[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] Design and Construction.** When accessible parking spaces are required by this section, they shall be designed and constructed in accordance with the UBC.

**1118A.4[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] Parking Space Size.** Parking spaces for persons with physical disabilities shall be located on the shortest possible route to an accessible entrance and shall be sized as follows:

**1118A.4.1[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC]** Where single spaces are provided, they shall be 14 feet (4267 mm) wide and outlined to provide a 9-foot (2743 mm) parking area and a 5-foot (1524 mm) loading and unloading access aisle on the passenger side of the vehicle. When more than one space is provided in lieu of providing a 14-foot-wide (4267 mm) space for each parking space, two spaces can be provided within a 23-foot-wide (7010 mm) area lined to provide a 9-foot (2743 mm) parking area on each side of a 5-foot (1524 mm) loading and unloading access aisle in the center. The minimum length of each parking space shall be 18 feet (5486 mm).

**NOTE:** See figures in Chapter 11B.

**1118A.4.2[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC]** One in every eight accessible spaces, but not less than one, shall be served by an access aisle 96 inches (2438 mm) wide minimum, and shall be designated van accessible as required by Section 1118A.4.1. All such spaces may be grouped on one level of a parking structure.

**1118A.4.3[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] Arrangement of parking spaces.** *In each parking area, a bumper or curb shall be provided and located to prevent encroachment of cars over the required width of walkways. Also, the space shall be so located that people with physical disabilities are not compelled to wheel or walk behind parked cars other than their own. Pedestrian ways which are accessible to people with physical disabilities shall be provided from each such parking space to related facilities, including curb cuts or ramps as needed. Ramps shall not encroach into any parking space.*

**EXCEPTIONS:** *1.Ramps located at the front of parking spaces for people with physical disabilities may encroach into the length of such spaces when such encroachment does not limit a person with physical disabilities' capability to leave or enter their vehicle, thus providing equivalent facilitation.*

**NOTE:** *See figures in Chapter 11B.*

*2.Parking spaces may be provided which would require a person with physical disabilities to wheel or walk behind other than accessible parking spaces when the enforcing agency determines that compliance with these regulations or providing equivalent facilitation would create an unreasonable hardship.*

**1118A.4.4[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] Slope of parking spaces.** *Surface slopes of accessible parking spaces shall be the minimum possible and shall not exceed  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch (6 mm) per foot (2.083% gradient) in any direction.*

**1118A.5[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] Signs.** *Every parking space required by this section shall be identified by a sign, centered between 3 feet (914 mm) and 5 feet (1524 mm) above the parking surface, at the head of the parking space. The sign shall include the International Symbol of Accessibility and state RESERVED, or equivalent language.*

**NOTE:** *For parking spaces at privately funded covered multifamily buildings, use Section 1118A.1.*

*An additional sign shall also be posted in a conspicuous place at each entrance to off-street parking facilities or immediately adjacent to and visible from each stall or space. The sign shall not be less than 17 inches (432 mm) by 22 inches (559 mm) in size with lettering not less than 1 inch (25 mm) in height, which clearly and conspicuously states the following:*

*Unauthorized vehicles parked in designated handicapped spaces not displaying distinguishing placards or license plates issued for physically disabled persons may be towed away at owner's expense. Towed vehicles may be reclaimed at \_\_\_\_\_ or by telephoning \_\_\_\_\_.*

*In addition to the above requirements, the surface of each accessible parking space or stall shall have a surface identification duplicating either of the following schemes:*

**1118A.5.1***[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] By outlining or painting the stall or space in blue and outlining on the ground in the stall or space in white or suitable contrasting color a profile view depicting a wheelchair with occupant; or,*

**1118A.5.2***[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] By outlining a profile view of a wheelchair with occupant in white on blue background. The profile view shall be located so that it is visible to a traffic enforcement officer when a vehicle is properly parked in the space and shall be 36 inches high by 36 inches wide (914 mm by 914 mm).*

**NOTE:** *See figures in Chapter 11B.*

**Section 1119A [FOR HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] — REQUIREMENTS FOR ACCESSIBLE ROUTES IN COVERED BUILDINGS WITHOUT AN ELEVATOR**

*(Provisions below do not apply to multiple-story dwelling units in privately funded nonelevator buildings, i.e., townhouses.)*

<p align="center"><b>IF SINGLE BUILDING WITH COMMON (LOBBY) ENTRANCE</b>  <b>Use only the following steps for determining required access to adaptable units:</b></p>	
1.	All ground-floor units in nonelevator buildings must be adaptable and on an accessible route to comply with the requirements unless an accessible route is not required as determined by Test No. 1, Individual Building Test, or Test No. 3, Unusual Characteristics Test as described below. Twenty percent of the ground-floor dwelling units that are not required to have an accessible route shall be adaptable. The remaining ground-floor dwelling units must comply with the features listed in Section 101.17 unless exempted by Test No. 3, Unusual Characteristics Test.
2.	You may use Individual Building Test No. 1 below only if site has terrain over 15 percent slope.
3.	You may use Unusual Characteristics Test No. 3 if applicable. See the test.
<p align="center"><b>ALL OTHER SITES, INCLUDING SINGLE BUILDING WITH MULTIPLE ENTRANCES</b>  <b>Use only the following steps for determining required access to adaptable units:</b></p>	
1.	All ground-floor units in nonelevator buildings must be adaptable and on an accessible route to comply with the requirements unless an accessible route is not required as determined by Test No. 1, Individual Building Test, or Test No. 2, Site Analysis Test, or Test No. 3, Unusual Characteristics Test as described below. A minimum of 20 percent of the ground-floor dwelling units are required to have an accessible route and shall be adaptable. The remaining ground-floor dwelling units must comply with the features listed in Section 101.17 unless exempted by Test No. 3, Unusual Characteristics Test.
2.	Use Individual Building Test No. 1 below only if site has terrain over 15 percent slope.
3.	Use Site Analysis Test No. 2 only if site has terrain over 10 percent slope.
4.	Use Unusual Characteristics Test No. 3 if applicable. See the test.

**Provisions to Test Nos. 1 and 2.** Where a building elevator is provided only as means of creating an accessible route to dwelling units on a ground floor, the building is not considered to be an elevator building for purposes of this code; hence, only the ground-floor dwelling units would be covered.

**TEST NO. 1—INDIVIDUAL BUILDING TEST**

It is not required by this code to provide an accessible route when the terrain of the site is such that:

- (1) The slopes of the undisturbed site measured between the planned entrance and all vehicular or pedestrian arrival points within 50 feet (15 240 mm) of the planned entrance exceed 15 percent; and
- (2) The slopes of the planned finished grade measured between the entrance and all vehicular or pedestrian arrival points within 50 feet (15 240 mm) of the planned entrance also exceed 15 percent.

If there are no vehicular or pedestrian arrival points within 50 feet (15 240 mm) of the planned entrance, the slope for the purposes of Test No. 1 will be measured to the closest vehicular or pedestrian arrival point.



*For purposes of these requirements, vehicular or pedestrian arrival points include public or resident parking areas, public transportation stops, passenger loading zones, and public streets or sidewalks. To determine site impracticality, the slope would be measured at ground level from the point of the planned entrance on a straight line to (i) each vehicular or pedestrian arrival point that is within 50 feet (15 240 mm) of the planned entrance, or (ii) if there are no vehicular or pedestrian arrival points within the specified area, the vehicular or pedestrian arrival point closest to the planned entrance. In the case of sidewalks, the closest point to the entrance will be where a public sidewalk entering the site intersects with the walk to the entrance. In the case of resident parking areas, the closest point to the planned entrance will be measured from the entry point to the parking area that is located closest to the planned entrance.*

### **TEST NO. 2—SITE ANALYSIS TEST**

*For a site having multiple buildings, or a site with a single building with multiple entrances, it is not required to provide an accessible route under the following conditions:*

*(1) Calculate the percentage of the total buildable area of the undisturbed site with a natural grade less than 10 percent slope. The analysis of the existing slope (before grading) shall be done on a topographic survey with 2-foot (610 mm) contour intervals with slope determination made between each successive interval. The accuracy of the slope analysis shall be certified by a licensed engineer, landscape architect, architect or surveyor.*

*(2) Determine the requirement of providing an accessible route to planned multifamily dwellings based on the topography of the existing natural terrain. The minimum percentage of ground-floor units required on an accessible route shall equal the percentage of the total buildable area (not restricted-use areas) of the undisturbed site with an existing natural grade of less than 10 percent slope.*

*(3) In addition to the percentage established in paragraph (2), all ground-floor units in a building, or ground-floor units served by a particular entrance, shall be made accessible if the entrance to the units is on an accessible route with a slope between the planned entrance and a pedestrian or vehicular arrival point not exceeding 8.33 percent.*

### **TEST NO. 3-UNUSUAL CHARACTERISTICS TEST**

*Unusual characteristics include sites located in a federally designated floodplain or coastal high-hazard area and sites subject to other similar requirements of law or code that the lowest floor or the lowest structural member of the lowest floor must be raised to a specified level at or above the base flood elevation. An accessible route to a building entrance is impractical due to unusual characteristics of the site when:*

*(1) The original site characteristics result in a difference in finished grade elevation exceeding 30 inches (762 mm) and 10 percent measured between an entrance and all vehicular or pedestrian arrival points within 50 feet (15 240 mm) of the planned entrance; or*

*(2) If there are no vehicular or pedestrian arrival points within 50 feet (15240 mm) of the planned entrance, the unusual characteristics result in a difference in finished grade elevation exceeding 30 inches (762 mm) and 10 percent measured between an entrance and the closest vehicular or pedestrian arrival point.*

**Section 1120A — [FOR HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] GENERAL ACCESSIBILITY FOR ENTRANCES, EXITS AND PATHS OF TRAVEL**

*NOTE: In addition to provisions of this section, exits that provide access to, or egress from, buildings for persons with disabilities shall also comply with Chapter 10.*

**1120A.1[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] Building Accessibility.** *See Chapter 10, Section 1003.2.10.*

**1120A.1.1[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC]** *All primary entrances and exterior ground-floor exit doors to buildings and facilities shall be made accessible to persons with disabilities.*

**1120A.1.2[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] Temporary restrictions.** *During periods of partial or restricted use of a building or facility, the entrances used for primary access shall be accessible to and usable by persons with disabilities.*

**1120A.1.3[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] Recessed doormats.** *Recessed doormats shall be adequately anchored to prevent interference with wheelchair traffic.*

**1120A.2[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] Doors.**

**1120A.2.1[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] Type of lock or latch.** *See Chapter 10, Section 1003.3.1.8.*

**1120A.2.2[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] Width and height.** *See Chapter 10, Section 1003.3.1.3a.*

**1120A.2.3[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] Hinged doors.** *For hinged doors, the opening width shall be measured with the door positioned at an angle of 90 degrees from its closed position.*

**1120A.2.3.1[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] Pairs of doors.** *Where a pair of doors is utilized, at least one of the doors shall provide a clear, unobstructed opening width of 32 inches (813 mm) with the leaf positioned at an angle of 90 degrees from its closed position.*

**1120A.2.3.2[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] Automatic doors.** *When an automatic door operator is utilized to operate a pair of doors, at least one of the doors shall provide a clear, unobstructed opening width of 32 inches (813 mm) with the door positioned at an angle of 90 degrees from its closed position.*

**EXCEPTIONS:** 1. *The provisions of Section 1120A.2.3.2 shall not apply to existing buildings, except when otherwise required under conditions applicable to access for persons with disabilities. In existing buildings, the following shall apply:*

1.1 *Where the occupant load is less than 10, except Group I, Division 1 Occupancies, doorways may be 30 inches (762 mm) in clear width.*

1.2 *Where occupant load is greater than 10 and it is determined that compliance with Section 1120A.2.3 would create an unreasonable hardship, doorways may be 30 inches (762 mm) in clear width.*

2. *In existing buildings, the provisions of this section shall not apply when legal or physical constraints will not allow compliance with these building standards or equivalent facilitation without creating an unreasonable hardship. See Section 101.17.11, Item 4.*

**1120A.2.3.3[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] Revolving doors.** *Revolving doors shall not be used as a required entrance for persons with disabilities.*

**1120A.2.4[For HCD 1/AC w/exceptions & DSA/AC] Thresholds.** *The floor or landing shall not be more than 1/2 inch (12.7 mm) lower than the threshold of the doorway.*

*Changes in level between 1/4 inch (6 mm) and 1/2 inch (12.7 mm) shall be beveled with a slope no greater than 1 unit vertical in 2 units horizontal (50% slope). Changes in level greater than 1/2 inch (12.7 mm) shall be accomplished by means of a ramp.*

**EXCEPTIONS:** 1. *Section 1120A.2.4 shall not be enforced retroactively.*

2. *At the primary entry door to dwelling units in covered multifamily buildings, with direct exterior access, outside landing surfaces constructed of impervious materials such as concrete, brick or flagstone, shall be no more than 1/2 inch (12.7 mm) below the floor level of the interior of the dwelling unit immediately adjacent to the primary entry door.*

3. *Changes in elevation in covered multifamily dwellings shall comply with this provision. Except as provided at the primary entrance, thresholds at exterior doors, including sliding door tracks, shall be no higher than 3/4 inch (19 mm). Thresholds and changes in level at these locations shall be beveled with a slope no greater than 1 unit vertical in 2 units horizontal (50% slope).*

4. *Exterior deck, patio or balcony surfaces shall be no more than 4 inches (102 mm) below the floor level of the interior of the dwelling unit. Change in level greater than 1/2 inch (12.7 mm) shall be accomplished by means of a ramp.*

**1120A.2.4.1[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] Level floor or landing.** *See Chapter 10, Section 1003.3.1.6.2a.*

**1120A.2.4.2[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] Maneuvering clearances at doors.** *The floor or landing on each side of an exit door shall be level. The level area shall have a length in the direction of the door swing of at least 60 inches (1524 mm) and the length opposite the direction of the door swing of 44 inches (1118 mm) as measured at right angles to the plane of the door in its closed position.*

**EXCEPTIONS:** *1. In Group R Occupancies, the level area shall have a length both in the direction of door swing and opposite the direction of door swing of 44 inches (1118 mm) as measured at right angles to the plane of the door in its closed position.*

*2. In buildings containing covered multifamily dwelling units, the floor or landing immediately outside the entry may be sloped up to  $1/8$  inch (3 mm) per foot (12 inches) (305 mm), in a direction away from the primary entrance of the dwelling unit for drainage.*

**1120A.2.4.3[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC]** *The width of the level area on the side to which the door swings shall extend 24 inches (610 mm) past the strike edge of the door for exterior doors and 18 inches (457 mm) past the strike edge for interior doors.*

**NOTES:** *1. Twenty-four inches (610 mm) is preferred for strike-side clearance.*

*2. See Section 1109A.2 and Tables 1109A.2-1 and 1109A.2-2 for bathrooms that are required to be accessible.*

**1120A.2.4.4[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC]** *The space between two consecutive door openings in a vestibule, serving other than a required exit stairway shall provide a minimum of 48 inches (1219 mm) of clear space from any door opening into such vestibule when the door is positioned at an angle of 90 degrees from its closed position. Doors in a series shall swing either in the same direction or away from the space between the doors.*

*Where the door opens into a stair or smoke proof enclosure, the landing need not have a length of 60 inches (1524 mm).*

**1120A.2.4.5[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] Egress from door.** *Every exit door required by this section shall give immediate access to an approved means of egress from the building.*

**1120A.2.5[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] Closer—Effort to operate doors.** *Maximum effort to operate doors shall not exceed  $8\frac{1}{2}$  pounds (38 N) for exterior doors and 5 pounds (22 N) for interior doors, such pull or push effort being applied at right angles to hinged doors and at the center plane of sliding or folding doors. Compensating devices or automatic door operators may be utilized to meet the above standards. When fire doors are required, the maximum effort to operate the door may be increased to the minimum allowable by the appropriate administrative authority, not to exceed 15 pounds (66.7 N).*

**1120A.2.5.1[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC]** *Hand-activated door-opening hardware shall be centered between 30 inches (762 mm) and 44 inches (1118 mm) above the floor. Latching and locking doors that are hand-activated and that are in a path of travel shall be operable with a single effort by lever-type hardware, panic bars, push-pull activating bars, or other hardware designed to provide passage without requiring the ability to grasp the opening hardware. Locked exit doors shall operate per Section 1120A.2.5, in egress direction. Doors to individual hotel or motel units shall operate similarly, except that when a bolt and unlatching operation is key operated from corridor or exterior side of unit door, large bow keys 2 inches (51 mm) (full bow) or 1<sup>1</sup>/<sub>4</sub> inches (32 mm) (half bow) shall be provided in lieu of lever-type hardware on the corridor side. Separate dead-lock activation on room side of corridor doors in hotels or motels shall have lever handle or large thumb turn on an easily reached location.*

**1120A.2.6[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC]** *Smooth surface. The bottom 10 inches (254 mm) of all doors except automatic and sliding shall have a smooth, uninterrupted surface to allow the door to be opened by a wheelchair footrest without creating a trap or hazardous condition. Where narrow frame doors are used, a 10 inch (254 mm) high smooth panel shall be installed on the push side of the door, which will allow the door to be opened by a wheelchair footrest without creating a trap or hazardous condition.*

**1120A.3[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC]** *Corridors and Exterior Exit Balconies.*

**1120A.3.1[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC]** *Corridor widths. Every corridor serving an occupant load of 10 or more shall not be less than 44 inches (1118 mm) in width. Corridors serving an occupant load of less than 10 shall not be less than 36 inches (914 mm) in width.*

**1120A.3.2[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC]** *Corridors over 200 feet (60 960 mm). Corridors that exceed 200 feet (60 960 mm) in length shall:*

- 1. Have minimum clear width of 60 inches (1524 mm); or*
- 2. Have at a central location, a 60-inch by 60-inch (1524 mm by 1524 mm) minimum wheelchair turning space or passing alcove; or*
- 3. Have at a central location, an intervening cross or tee corridor a minimum of 44 inches (1118 mm) in width; or*
- 4. Have, at a central location, an operable door.*

**EXCEPTION [for HCD 1/AC]:** *All corridors within privately funded multifamily dwelling units shall be at least 36 inches (914 mm) wide.*

**1120A.3.3[For DSA/AC w/exception 2 & HCD 1/AC w/exceptions 1 & 2] Changes in elevation.** When a corridor or exterior exit balcony is accessible to the handicapped, changes in elevation of the floor shall be made by means of a ramp, except as provided for doors by Section 1003.3.4.

**EXCEPTIONS:** 1. Changes in elevation in covered multifamily dwellings shall comply with this provision. Except as provided at the primary entrance, thresholds at exterior doors, including sliding door tracks, shall be no higher than  $\frac{3}{4}$  inch (19 mm). Thresholds and changes in level at these locations shall be beveled with a slope no greater than 1 unit vertical in 2 units horizontal (50% slope).

2. Exterior deck, patio or balcony surfaces shall be no more than 4 inches (102 mm) below the floor level of the interior of the dwelling unit. Change in level greater than  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm) shall be accomplished by means of a ramp.

**1120A.4[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] Handrails.**

**1120A.4.1[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] Required handrails.** See Chapter 10, Section 1003.3.3.6a.

**1120A.4.2[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] Handrail Configuration.**

**1120A.4.2.1[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] Handrails shall be** 34 to 38 inches (864 to 965 mm) above the nosing of the treads.

**1120A.4.2.2[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] Handrails shall extend a minimum of 12 inches (305 mm) beyond the top nosing and 12 inches (305 mm), plus the tread width, beyond the bottom nosing.**

**1120A.4.2.3[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] Ends shall be returned or shall terminate in newel posts or safety terminals.**

**1120A.4.2.4[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] Where the extension of the handrail in the direction of the stair run would create a hazard, the termination of the extension shall be made either rounded or returned smoothly to floor, wall or post. Where the stairs are continuous from landing to landing, the inner rail shall be continuous and need not extend out into the landing.**

**1120A.4.2.5[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] Handrails projecting from a wall shall have a space of  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inches (38 mm) between the wall and the handrail.**

Handrails may be located in a recess if the recess is a maximum of 3 inches (76 mm) deep and extends at least 18 inches (457 mm) above the top of the rail. Handrails shall not rotate within their fittings.

**1120A.4.2.6[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC]** *The handgrip portion of handrails shall not be less than 1<sup>1</sup>/<sub>4</sub> inches (32 mm) nor more than 1<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub> inches (38 mm) in cross-sectional dimension or the shape shall provide an equivalent gripping surface. The handgrip portion of handrails shall have a smooth surface with no sharp corners. Any wall or other surface adjacent to the handrail shall be free of sharp or abrasive elements. Edges shall have a minimum radius of 1/8 inch (3 mm).*

**EXCEPTIONS:** *1. In covered multifamily dwellings, the diameter or width of the gripping surface of a handrail shall be 1<sup>1</sup>/<sub>4</sub> inches (32 mm) to 1<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub> inches (38 mm) or shaped to provide an equivalent gripping surface.*

*2. In covered multifamily dwellings, any wall or other surface adjacent to the handrail shall be free of any sharp or abrasive elements. Edges shall have a minimum radius of 1/8 inch (3 mm).*

**1120A.4.3[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC]** ***Striping for the visually impaired.** The upper approach and the lower tread of each stair shall be marked by a strip of clearly contrasting color at least 2 inches (51 mm) wide placed parallel to, and not more than 1 inch (25 mm) from, the nose of the step or landing to alert the visually impaired. The strip shall be of material that is at least as slip resistant as the other treads of the stair.*

*Where stairways occur outside a building, the upper approach and all treads shall be marked by a strip of clearly contrasting color at least 2 inches (51 mm) wide and placed parallel to and not more than 1 inch (25 mm) from the nose of the step or landing to alert the visually impaired. The strip shall be of a material that is at least as slip resistant as the other treads of the stair. A painted strip shall be acceptable.*

**1120A.4.3.1[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC]** ***Treads.** All tread surfaces shall be slip-resistant. Treads shall have smooth, rounded or chamfered exposed edges, and no abrupt edges at the nosing (lower front edge).*

**1120A.4.3.2[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC]** ***Nosing.** Nosing shall not project more than 1<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub> inches (38 mm) past the face of the riser below.*

**1120A.4.3.3[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC]** *Open risers are not permitted.*

**EXCEPTION:** *In covered multifamily buildings, open risers are not permitted on accessible routes.*

**1120A.5[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC]** ***Ramps.***

**1120A.5.1[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] Widths as for exits.** The width of ramps shall be as required for stairways and exits.

**1120A.5.2[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] Width.** The width of ramps shall be as required for stairways and exits.

**1120A.5.3[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] Primary entrance and special occupancy.** Pedestrian ramps serving primary entrances to buildings having an occupant load of 300 or more shall have a minimum clear width of 60 inches (1524 mm). Ramps serving Group R Occupancies may be 36 inches (914 mm) clear width when the occupant load is 50 or less. All other pedestrian ramps shall have a minimum width of 48 inches (1219 mm).

**1120A.5.4[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] Slope.** The maximum slope of a ramp that serves any exit way, provides access for persons with physical disabilities or is in the path of travel shall be 1-foot (305 mm) rise in 12 feet (3658 mm) of horizontal run.

**1120A.5.4.1[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] Cross slope.** The cross slope of ramp surfaces shall be no greater than 1 unit vertical in 50 units horizontal (2% slope).

**1120A.5.4.2[For HCD 1/AC] Outdoor ramps.** See Chapter 10, Section 1006.3.4.1.1.

**1120A.5.5[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] Landings.** Ramp landings shall be installed as follows.

**1120A.5.5.1[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] Location of landings.** Landings shall be provided at the top and bottom of each ramp. Intermediate landings shall be provided at intervals not exceeding 30 inches (762 mm) of vertical rise and at each change of direction. Landings are not considered in determining the maximum horizontal distance of each ramp

**NOTE:** Examples of ramp dimensions are:

SLOPE	MAXIMUM RISE (Inches)	MAXIMUM HORIZONTAL PROJECTION (Feet)
	( x 2.54 for mm)	( x 304.8 for mm)
1:12	30	30
1:16	30	40
1:20	30	50
1:15	30	37.5

**1120A.5.5.2[For HCD 1/AC w/exception & DSA/AC w/o exception] Size of top landings.** Top landings shall not be less than 60 inches (1524 mm) wide and shall have a length of not less than 60 inches (1524 mm) in the direction of ramp run.



**EXCEPTION:** *In privately funded multifamily buildings, the top landings shall not be less than 60 inches (1524 mm) wide and shall have a length of not less than 44 inches (1118 mm) in the direction of ramp run. The top landing width shall extend a minimum of 24 inches (610 mm) past the strike edge of the door.*

**1120A.5.5.3[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] Encroachment of doors.** *See Chapter 10, Section 1003.3.4.4.*

**1120A.5.5.4[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] Strike edge extension.** *The width of the landing shall extend 24 inches (610 mm) past the strike edge of any door or gate for exterior ramps and 18 inches (457 mm) past the strike edge for interior ramps.*

**1120A.5.5.5[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] Landing width.** *At bottom and intermediate landings, the width shall be at least the same as required for the ramps.*

**120A.5.5.6[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] Change of direction.** *Intermediate and bottom landings at a change of direction in excess of 30 degrees shall have a dimension in the direction of ramp run of not less than 72 inches (1829 mm) to accommodate the handrail extension.*

**1120A.5.5.7[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] Other intermediate landings.** *Other intermediate landings shall have a dimension in the direction of ramp run of not less than 60 inches (1524 mm).*

**1120A.5.5.8 [For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] For existing ramps or ramps not covered by Section 1003.3.4,** *landings shall be provided as set forth in Section 1003.3.4.*

**1120A.5.5.9[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] Hazards.** *Required ramps shall have a curb at least 2 inches (51 mm) high, or a wheel guide rail 2 to 4 inches (51 to 102 mm) high on each side of the ramp landing that has a vertical drop exceeding 4 inches (102 mm) and that is not bounded by a wall or fence.*

**1120A.5.6[For HCD 1/AC w/exception 3; DSA/AC w/exceptions 1, 2, 3] Handrails.** Handrails are required on ramps that provide access if slope exceeds 1 foot rise in 20 feet of horizontal run (5% slope). Handrails shall be placed on each side of each ramp, shall be continuous the full length of the ramp, shall be 34 to 38 inches (864 to 965 mm) above the ramp surface, shall extend a minimum of 1 foot (305 mm) beyond the top and bottom of the ramp, and the ends shall be returned. Handrails projecting from a wall shall have a space of not less than  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inches (38 mm) between the wall and the handrail. Handrails may be located in a recess if the recess is a maximum of 3 inches (76 mm) deep and extends at least 18 inches (457 mm) above the top of the rail. The grip portion shall not be less than  $1\frac{1}{4}$  inches (32 mm) nor more than  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inches (38 mm), or the shape shall provide an equivalent gripping surface and all surfaces shall be smooth with no sharp corners. Handrails shall not rotate within their fittings. Any wall or other surface adjacent to the handrail shall be free of sharp or abrasive elements. Edges shall have a minimum radius of  $\frac{1}{8}$  inch (3 mm).

**EXCEPTIONS:** 1. Curb ramps do not require handrails.

2. In Group 1, Division 1 Occupancies, ramps shall be provided with handrails ramps that require handrails.

3. Multifamily buildings that are required to provide ramps for persons with physical disabilities shall have handrails if the slope exceeds 1 foot of rise in 20 feet of horizontal run (5% slope).

4. Ramps that require handrails and that serve one individual dwelling unit in Group R, Division 1 or 3 Occupancies may have one handrail except that such ramps open on one or both sides shall have handrails provided on the open side or sides.

5. Multifamily buildings that are required to provide ramps for persons with physical disabilities shall have handrails if the slope exceeds 1 foot of rise in 20 feet of horizontal run (5% slope).

**1120A.5.7[For HCD 1/AC, DSA/AC] Wheel guides.** Where the ramp surface is not bounded by a wall or fence and the ramp exceeds 10 feet (3048 mm) in length, the ramp shall comply with one of the following requirements:

1. A guide curb a minimum of 2 inches (51 mm) in height shall be provided at each side of the ramp; or

2. A wheel guide rail shall be provided, centered 3 inches (76 mm) plus or minus 1 inch (25 mm) above the surface or the ramp.

**1120A.5.8[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] Ramps more than 30 inches (762 mm) above the adjacent ground shall be provided with guardrails as required by Section 509, and handrails as required in Section 1003.3.4.5. Such guardrails shall be continuous from the top of the ramp to the bottom of the ramp.**

**1120A.6[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] Walks and Sidewalks.**

**1120A.6.1[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] Continuous surface.** Walks and sidewalks subject to these regulations shall have a continuous common surface, not interrupted by steps or by abrupt changes in level exceeding  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm) (see Section 1120A.6.3), and shall be a minimum of 48 inches (1219 mm) in width. Surfaces shall be slip-resistant as follows:

1. **Slopes less than 6 percent.** Surfaces with a slope of less than 6 percent gradient shall be at least as slip-resistant as that described as a medium salted finish.

2. **Slopes 6 percent or greater.** Surfaces with a slope of 6 percent gradient shall be slip-resistant.

3. **Surface cross slopes.** Surface cross slopes shall not exceed  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch (6 mm) per foot except when the enforcing agency finds that due to local conditions it creates an unreasonable hardship, the cross slope shall be increased to a maximum of  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm) per foot for distances not to exceed 20 feet (6096 mm).

**EXCEPTION:** Sidewalks serving individual dwelling units in privately covered multifamily buildings may be reduced to 36 inches (914 mm) in clear width. All other sidewalks shall be a minimum of 48 inches (1219 mm) in clear width.

**1120A.6.2[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] Gratings.** Walks, sidewalks and pedestrian ways shall be free of gratings whenever possible. For gratings located in the surface of any of these areas, grid openings in gratings shall be limited to  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm) in the direction of traffic flow.

**EXCEPTIONS:** 1. Where the enforcing agency determines that compliance with this section would create an unreasonable hardship, an exception may be granted when equivalent facilitation is provided.

2. This section shall not apply in those conditions where, due to legal or physical constraints, the site of the project will not allow compliance with these building standards or equivalent facilitation without creating an unreasonable hardship. See Section 101.17.11, Item 4.

**1120A.6.3[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] Five percent gradient.** When the slope in the direction of travel of any walk exceeds 1 unit vertical in 20 units horizontal (5% slope), it shall comply with the provisions of Section 1120A.5, Ramps.

**1120A.6.4[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] Changes in level.** Abrupt changes in level along any accessible route shall not exceed  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm). When changes in level do occur, they shall be beveled with a slope no greater than 1 unit vertical in 2 units horizontal (50% slope), except that level changes not exceeding  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch (6 mm) may be vertical.

When changes in levels greater than  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm) are necessary, they shall comply with the requirements for curb ramps.

**NOTE:** See Section 1117A.4.

**1120A.6.5[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] Level areas.** Walks shall be provided with a level area not less than 60 inches by 60 inches (1524 mm by 1524 mm) at a door or gate that swings toward the walk, and not less than 48 inches wide by 44 inches (1219 mm by 1118 mm) deep at a door or gate that swings away from the walk. Such walks shall extend 24 inches (610 mm) to the side of the strike edge of a door or gate that swings toward the walk. (For an example, see Figure 11B–26B.)

**1120A.6.6[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] Walks with continuous gradients.** All walks with continuous gradients shall have level areas at least 5 feet (1524 mm) in length at intervals of at least every 400 feet (121 920 mm).

**1120A.7[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] Hazards.**

**1120A.7.1[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] Warning curbs.** Abrupt changes in level, except between a walk or sidewalk and an adjacent street or driveway, exceeding 4 inches (102 mm) in a vertical dimension, such as at planters or fountains located in or adjacent to walks, sidewalks or other pedestrian ways, shall be identified by curbs projecting at least 6 inches (152 mm) in height above the walk or sidewalk surface to warn the blind of a potential drop off.

When a guardrail or handrail is provided, no curb is required when a guide rail is provided centered 3 inches (76 mm) plus or minus 1 inch (25 mm) above the surface of the walk or sidewalk, the walk is 5 percent or less gradient, or no adjacent hazard exists.

**1120A.7.2[For HCD 1/AC & DSA/AC] Overhanging obstructions.** Any obstruction that overhangs a pedestrian's way shall be a minimum of 80 inches (2032 mm) above the walking surface as measured from the bottom of the obstruction. Where a guy support is used parallel to a path of travel, including, but not limited to, sidewalks, a guy brace, sidewalk guy or similar device shall be used to prevent an overhanging obstruction as defined (see Figure 11B–28).

Hazards such as drop-offs adjacent to walkways or overhanging obstructions can be dangerous to persons with vision problems. This section addresses these situations.

## **Chapter 11B [For DSA/AC]**

# **ACCESSIBILITY TO PUBLIC BUILDINGS PUBLIC ACCOMMODATIONS, COMMERCIAL BUILDINGS AND PUBLICLY FUNDED HOUSING**

*NOTE: For privately funded housing, see Chapter 11A.*

### **Division I-NEW BUILDINGS**

#### **Section 1101B — SCOPE**

**1101B.1 General.** *Buildings or portions of buildings shall be accessible to persons with disabilities as required by this chapter.*

**1101B.2 Design.** *The design and construction of accessible building elements shall be in accordance with this chapter and sections that are listed in Section 1114B.1.1.*

#### **1101B.3 Maintenance of Accessible Features.**

*1.A public accommodation shall maintain in operable working condition those features of facilities and equipment that are required to be accessible to and usable by persons with disabilities.*

*2.This section does not prohibit isolated or temporary interruptions in service or access due to maintenance or repairs.*

**1101B.4 Dimensional Tolerances.** *All dimensions are subject to conventional building industry tolerances for field conditions.*

#### **Section 1102B — DEFINITIONS**

*For the purpose of the chapter, certain terms are defined as follows:*

**ACCESSIBLE** *is approachable and usable by persons with disabilities in compliance with this code.*

**ACCESSIBLE ROUTE OF TRAVEL** *is a continuous unobstructed path connecting all accessible elements and spaces in an accessible building or facility that can be negotiated by a person with a severe disability using a wheelchair and that is also safe for and usable by persons with other disabilities, and that is consistent with the definition of “path of travel” in Section 217.*

**ADAPTABILITY** refers to the capability of spaces or facilities to be readily modified and made accessible.

**AREA FOR EVACUATION ASSISTANCE** is an accessible space which is protected from fire and smoke and which facilitates a delay in egress.

**HANDRAIL** is a device to be used as a hand hold.

**NOSE, NOSING**, is that portion of a tread projecting beyond the face of the riser immediately below.

**OPEN RISER** is the air space between tread projecting beyond the face of the riser immediately below.

**PRIMARY ENTRY LEVEL** is the floor or level of the building on which the primary entry is located.

**RISER** is the vertical distance from the top of the tread to the top of the next higher tread.

**STAIR RAILING** is a vertical barrier constructed along the open side or sides of stairways and as intermediate stair rails where required on wide stairways.

**TREAD** is the horizontal member of a step.

**TREAD DEPTH** is the horizontal distance from the front to back of tread, including nosing when used.

**TREAD RUN** is the horizontal distance from the leading edge of a tread to the leading edge of an adjacent tread.

**NOTE:** For additional definitions pertinent to the Division of the State Architect/Access Compliance accessibility requirements, see Chapter 2.

## **Section 1103B — BUILDING ACCESSIBILITY**

**1103B.1 General.** *Accessibility to buildings or portions of buildings shall be provided for all occupancy classifications except as modified or enhanced by this chapter. Occupancy requirements in this chapter may modify general requirements, but never to the exclusion of them. Multistory buildings must provide access by ramp or elevator.*

**EXCEPTIONS:** *1. Floors or portions of floors not customarily occupied, including, but not limited to, nonoccupiable or employee spaces accessed only by ladders, catwalks, crawl spaces, very narrow passageways or freight (nonpassenger) elevators, and frequented only by service personnel for repair or maintenance purposes: such spaces as elevator pits and elevator penthouses, piping and equipment catwalks and machinery rooms. Stair stripping shall be required on stairs.*

*2. The following types of privately funded multistory buildings do not require a ramp or elevator above and below the first floor:*

*2.1 Multistoried office buildings (other than the professional office of a health care provider) and passenger vehicle service stations less than three stories high or less than 3,000 square feet (279 m<sup>2</sup>) per story.*

*2.2 Any other privately funded multistoried building that is not a shopping center, shopping mall or the professional office of a health care provider, and that is less than three stories high or less than 3,000 square feet (279 m<sup>2</sup>) per story if a reasonable portion of all facilities and accommodations normally sought and used by the public in such a building are accessible to and usable by persons with disabilities.*

## **Section 1104B — ACCESSIBILITY FOR GROUP A OCCUPANCIES**

**1104B.1 General.** *All Group A Occupancies shall be accessible as provided in this chapter. See also the general requirements listed in Section 1114B.1.1.*

**1104B.2 Assistive – listening Systems in Assembly Areas.** *Assembly areas, conference and meeting rooms shall provide assistive–listening systems for persons with hearing impairments as provided in this section.*

**EXCEPTION:** *This section does not apply to systems used exclusively for paging, or background music, or a combination of these two uses.*

*1. Number of personal receivers required.* *The minimum number of receivers to be provided shall be equal to 4 percent of the total number of seats, but in no case less than two.*

*2. Types of listening systems.* *Types of assistive–listening systems include, but are not limited to, audio–induction loops, radio frequency systems (AM or FM) and infrared transmission.*

**3. Location.** *If the assistive–listening system provided is limited to specific areas or seats, then such areas or seats shall be within a 50–foot (15240 mm) viewing distance of the performing area.*

**4. Signage.** *A sign shall be posted in a prominent place indicating the availability of assistive–listening devices. The sign shall include the international symbol of access for hearing loss and wording that states “Assistive–listening System Available.” See Figure 11B–14.*

**5. Fees and charges.** *Nothing in this section shall preclude a facility charging for such assistive–listening system its usual fee for audiovisual equipment. However, no surcharge may be placed directly on any particular individual with a disability or any group of individuals with disabilities to cover the costs of such equipment.*

**6. Portable systems.** *If portable assistive–listening systems are used for conference or meeting rooms, the system may serve more than one room. However, permanently installed assistive–listening systems are required in areas if (1) they accommodate at least 50 persons or if they have audio–amplification systems, and (2) they have fixed seating.*

### **1104B.3 Auditoriums, Assembly Halls, Theaters and Related Facilities.**

**1104B.3.1 Seating.** *In all assembly places where seating is provided, there shall be spaces for persons using wheelchairs and semiambulant persons, as provided in this section.*

**EXCEPTIONS:** *1. In existing buildings and facilities when the enforcing agency determines that compliance with the seating requirements of this code would create an unreasonable hardship, such requirements shall not apply. When the unreasonable hardship finding is applied, at least 1 percent of the total seating provided shall be accessible to and usable by persons with disabilities who use wheelchairs and such seating shall comply with the level requirements and the individual space requirements of this code.*

*2. When an existing theater is subdivided into more than one facility having upper levels not accessible by ramp or elevator, and the enforcing agency determines that full compliance with this code would create an unreasonable hardship, such upper levels need not be made accessible, provided all facilities at grade are accessible and any event, showing of motion pictures or other activities made available to the public in all of the facilities are scheduled to ensure that all such functions are available to the public in the accessible facility.*

**1104B.3.2 Accessibility to key facilities.** *Seating for persons with disabilities shall be accessible from the main lobby or from a primary entrance, together with related toilet facilities.*



**1104B.3.3 Variety of locations.** Accessible seating or accommodations in places of public amusement and resort, including theaters, concert halls and stadiums, but not including hotels and motels, shall be provided in a variety of locations so as to provide persons with disabilities a choice of admission prices otherwise available to members of the general public.

**1104B.3.4 Wheelchair Spaces.**

1.The number of such spaces is as shown in Table 11B–1.

**TABLE 11B-1—WHEELCHAIR SEATING SPACES**

<b>SEATING CAPACITY</b>	<b>NO. OF WHEELCHAIR SEATING SPACES</b>
4 to 26	1
27 to 50	2
51 to 300	4
301 to 500	6

In addition, 1 percent, but not less than one, of all fixed seats, shall be aisle seats with no armrests on the aisle side, or removable or folding armrests on the aisle side. Each such seat shall be identified by a sign or marker. Signage notifying patrons of the availability of such seats shall be posted at the ticket office.

2.When the seating capacity exceeds 500, one additional wheelchair seating space shall be provided for each total seating capacity increase of 100.

3.The ground or floor at spaces shall be level and shall comply with Section 1124B.

**1104B.3.5 Placement of wheelchair locations.** Wheelchair areas shall be an integral part of any fixed seating plan, and shall be arranged so as to provide persons with disabilities a choice of admission prices and lines of sight comparable to those for members of the general public. Each wheelchair area shall adjoin an accessible route which shall also serve as a means of egress in case of emergency. At least one companion fixed seat shall be provided next to each wheelchair seating area. When the seating capacity exceeds 300, wheelchair spaces shall be provided in more than one location in addition to complying with Section 1104B.3.3.

**EXCEPTION:** Accessible viewing positions where seating capacity is less than 300 may be clustered for bleachers, balconies and other areas having sight lines that require slopes of greater than 5 percent. Equivalent accessible viewing positions may be located on levels having accessible egress.

**1104B.3.6 Size of wheelchair location.** Each wheelchair location shall provide minimum clear floor or ground space as shown in Figure 11B–15, and shall adjoin an egress aisle on at least one side.

**1104B.3.7 Removable seats.** *Readily removable seats may be installed in these wheelchair spaces when such spaces are not required to accommodate wheelchair users.*

**1104B.3.8 Seating for semiambulant individuals.** *In addition to spaces provided for wheelchair users as noted in Sections 1104B.3.4 through 1104B.3.7 above, there shall be provided seating for semiambulant individuals. The number of such seating shall be equal to at least 1 percent of the total seating and shall be no fewer than two. Such seats shall provide at least 24 inches (610 mm) clear leg space between the front of the seat to the nearest obstruction or to the back of the seat immediately in front.*

**1104B.3.9 Life safety.** *In determining the location of seating for persons with disabilities, life safety shall be considered, and all seating provided must comply with the fire and panic safety requirements of the state fire marshal.*

**1104B.3.10 Access to performing areas.** *An accessible route shall connect wheelchair seating locations with performing areas, including stages, arena floors, dressing rooms, locker rooms and other spaces used by performers.*

**1104B.3.11 Stages, enclosed and unenclosed platforms, and orchestra pits.** *Stages, enclosed and unenclosed platforms, and orchestra pits shall be made accessible to persons with disabilities.*

**EXCEPTIONS:** *1. When the enforcing agency finds that requiring compliance with this code, for an enclosed or unenclosed platform or depressed area not more than 24 inches (610 mm) above or below an adjacent accessible level, would create an unreasonable hardship, the enclosed and unenclosed platform or depressed area shall be made accessible by a portable ramp with a slope not exceeding 1 unit vertical to 12 units horizontal (8.33% slope).*

*2. In existing buildings and facilities, all stages, enclosed or unenclosed platforms, and orchestra pits need not be accessible when the enforcing agency determines that compliance with this code would create an unreasonable hardship.*

**1104B.3.12 Ticket booths.** *Customer and employee sides of ticket booths and of concession and refreshment sales facilities shall be made accessible to persons with disabilities.*

**1104B.3.13 Miscellaneous areas.** *Public toilets and other public areas shall be made accessible to persons with disabilities.*

**1104B.4 Stadiums, Grandstands, Bleachers, Athletic Pavilions, Gymnasiums and Miscellaneous Sport-related Facilities.**

**1104B.4.1 Spectator seating.** *Spectator seating shall comply with Section 1104B.3.*

**1104B.4.2 Ticket booth.** *The customer side of a ticket booth shall be, and the employee side may be, accessible.*

**1104B.4.3 Participation areas.** *Participation areas shall be accessible to persons with disabilities, including the following listed and similar activity areas:*

- 1. Tennis, racquetball and handball courts.*
- 2. Gymnasium floor areas and general exercise rooms.*
- 3. Basketball, volleyball and badminton courts, and bowling lanes.*
- 4. Swimming pool deck areas must be accessible and an assisting device provided to assist persons with disabilities in gaining entry into the pool.*
- 5. Athletic team rooms and facilities, playing fields and running tracks.*

**1104B.4.4 Clubrooms.** *Clubrooms shall be made accessible to persons with disabilities.*

**1104B.4.5 Sanitary and locker facilities.** *Where spectator and/or participant sanitary and/or locker facilities are provided, they shall conform with the requirements in Sections 1115B and 1116B.*

**EXCEPTIONS:** *1. Where the enforcing agency determines that compliance with these regulations would create an unreasonable hardship, an exception may be granted when equivalent facilitation is provided through the use of other methods or materials.*

*2. In existing buildings, when the enforcing agency finds that compliance with regulations would create an unreasonable hardship, an exception may be granted when all of the following minimum conditions are met:*

- 2.1 When the total seating does not exceed 5,000 at least 1 percent of such seating shall be accessible to and usable by persons with disabilities. When the total seating provided exceeds 5,000, one additional seat for each 2,000 seats provided over 5,000 shall be accessible to and usable by persons with disabilities.*
- 2.2 Sanitary facilities, ticket booths, clubrooms, concessions and refreshment facilities are accessible.*
- 2.3 One of each type of participation area is usable and accessible.*

**1104B.5 Dining, Banquet and Bar Facilities.**

*1. General. Dining, banquet, and bar facilities shall be made accessible to persons with disabilities as provided in this section.*

**EXCEPTIONS:** *1. In existing buildings, when the enforcing agency determines that compliance with any regulation under this section would create an unreasonable hardship, an exception shall be granted when equivalent facilitation is provided.*

*2. In existing buildings, these regulations shall not apply when legal or physical constraints would not allow compliance with these regulations or equivalent facilitation without creating an unreasonable hardship. See Section 101.17.11, Item 4.*

**2. Entrance.** *Access to these facilities shall be provided at entrances and exits as required by Section 1133B.1.1.*

**3. Functional activity.** *Wheelchair access shall be provided to all areas where each type of functional activity occurs.*

**4. Seating.** *Each dining, banquet and bar area shall have one wheelchair seating space for each 20 seats, with at least one minimum wheelchair seating space per functional area. Such seating shall be designed and arranged to permit use by wheelchair occupants, and shall comply with Section 1122B, "Fixed or Built-in Seating, Tables, and Counters." Access to such seating spaces shall be provided with main aisles not less than 36 inches (914 mm) clear width. Accessible seating spaces shall be integrated with general seating to allow a reasonable selection of seating area and to avoid having one area specifically highlighted as the area for persons with disabilities. The ratio of accessible seating is based on the total number of seats provided.*

**5. Food service aisles.** *Food service aisles shall be a minimum of 36 inches (914 mm) of clear width with a preferred width of 42 inches (1067 mm) where passage of stopped wheelchairs by pedestrians is desired. Tray slides shall be mounted no higher than 34 inches (864 mm) above the floor. If self-service shelves are provided, a reasonable portion must be within the ranges shown in Figure 11B-16.*

**6. Tableware areas.** *Tableware, dishware, condiments, food and beverage display shelves, and dispensing devices shall comply with Section 1122B.4. See Figure 11B-17.*

**7. Restrooms.** *Restrooms and powder rooms shall conform to requirements in Section 1115B.*

**8. Food preparation areas.** *Access to food preparation areas shall comply with the provisions for entrance doors and doorways in Section 1004, and aisles in Sections 1004.3.2.1 and 1004.3.2.2.*

#### **1104B.6 Religious Facilities.**

**1104B.6.1 General.** *Religious facilities shall be made accessible to persons with disabilities as provided in this section.*

**EXCEPTION:** *In existing buildings, when the enforcing agency determines that compliance with any regulation under this section would create an unreasonable hardship, an exception shall be granted when equivalent facilitation is provided.*

**1104B.6.2 Sanctuary.** *Sanctuary areas shall be made accessible to persons with disabilities.*

**1104B.6.2.1** *Wheelchair seating spaces in these areas shall conform to the requirements in Section 1104B.3.1.*

**1104B.6.2.2** *Wheelchair access shall be provided to raised platforms, choir rooms, choir lofts, performing areas and other similar areas.*

**EXCEPTION:** *In existing buildings, these regulations shall not apply to choir lofts when the enforcing agency determines that such compliance would create an unreasonable hardship.*

**1104B.6.3 Assembly areas.** *Assembly areas shall be made accessible to persons with disabilities. Enclosed and unenclosed platforms and stages in assembly areas shall conform to these requirements.*

**1104B.6.4 Classrooms and offices.** *Classrooms and offices shall have entry doors that conform to the requirements in Chapter 10.*

**1104B.6.5 Sanitary facilities.** *Sanitary facilities shall conform to the requirements in Section 1115B.*

## **Section 1105B — ACCESSIBILITY FOR GROUP B OCCUPANCIES**

*Group B Occupancies shall be accessible as provided in this chapter. See also the general requirements listed in Section 1114B.1.1.*

**EXCEPTIONS:** *1. In existing buildings, when the enforcing agency determines that compliance with any regulation under this section would create an unreasonable hardship, an exception shall be granted when equivalent facilitation is provided.*

*2. In existing buildings, the provisions of this section shall not apply when legal or physical constraints will not allow compliance with these building standards or equivalent facilitation without creating an unreasonable hardship. See Section 101.17.11, Item 4.*

*3. For floors and levels in new and existing buildings, see Section 1120B.*

**1105B.1 General.** *The provisions of this section apply to the specified types of facilities and identify specific requirements of accessibility and usability which shall be provided for each of the listed occupancy uses.*

**1105B.2 Group B Occupancies.** *Group B Occupancies used for assembly purposes, but having an occupant load of less than 50, shall conform to the requirements as specified in Sections 1105B, 1107B and 1110B.*

**NOTE:** *For floors and levels in dining, banquet and bar facilities, see Section 1120B.*

**1105B.3 Office Buildings and Personal and Public Service Facilities.** *Office buildings and personal and public service facilities shall conform to the provisions of this section.*

**1105B.3.1 Facilities covered.** *Facilities covered in this section are those that are used by the public as customers, clients, visitors or which are potentially places of employment and shall include, but not be limited to, the following requirements:*

*1.All types of general and specialized business professional offices, including those related to professional medicine or dentistry, insurance, real estate, attorneys, credit bureaus, consultants, counseling and accounting.*

*2.All types of sales establishments, including outlets for all general and special merchandise and equipment, including personal and household furnishings and supplies, foods, sporting equipment, office supplies, vehicles and related parts and supplies, building materials, and pet shops.*

*3.All personal and public service facilities, including banks, savings and loan companies, credit unions, newspaper and printing establishments, photographic studios, laundermats, cleaning and laundry outlets, veterinarian clinics and hospitals, automobile rental agencies, travel bureaus, public utility facilities, police stations and detention facilities, courtrooms and fire stations.*

**1105B.3.2 Business and professional offices.** *Areas to be made accessible include the following:*

*1.Client and visitor areas and office areas, together with related toilet rooms.*

*2.Conference rooms, counseling rooms or cubicles and similar areas.*

*3.Employee work areas shall have a minimum of 36 inches (914 mm) wide clear access, except as modified in other portions of these regulations. See Sections 1133B.6.1 and 1133B.6.2.*

*4.Professional medical and dental offices shall be made accessible and shall also comply with Section 1109B.*

**1105B.3.3 Personal and public service facilities.** *Areas to be made accessible include the following:*

- 1. Client and visitor areas, office areas, and related toilet rooms shall be made accessible.*
- 2. Employee work areas shall have 36 inches (914 mm) wide clear access, except as modified in other portions of these regulations. See Sections 1133B.6.1 and 1133B.6.2.*
- 3. Automated teller machines used by a financial institution and its customers for the primary purposes of executing financial transactions. See Section 1117B.7.*

**1105B.3.4 Public utility facilities.** *Areas to be made accessible include the following:*

- 1. Office areas, meeting rooms and similar areas together with related toilet rooms shall be made accessible.*
- 2. Public tour areas, to the extent that such public tours are conducted through or about a facility, or where the public is permitted to walk in such areas, shall provide accessibility in those portions of the facility and grounds where this occurs.*

**EXCEPTIONS:** *1. Facilities located in operational areas which would not have any reasonable availability to or usage by persons who use wheelchairs for mobility are not subject to the wheelchair accessibility requirements of these regulations.*

*2. When the enforcing agency determines that compliance with this subsection would create an unreasonable hardship, an exception to such provision shall be granted when equivalent facilitation is provided.*

*3. Visitor overlook facilities, orientation areas and similar public-use areas, and any sanitary facilities that serve these facilities shall be made accessible.*

*4. Where public parking is provided, spaces shall be provided for persons with disabilities as specified in Sections 1129B and 1130B.*

**1105B.3.5 Police department, law enforcement, fire department facilities and courtrooms.** *Areas to be made accessible include the following:*

*1. Office areas, conference rooms, classrooms, dispatch rooms and similar areas, along with related sanitary facilities, shall be made accessible.*

*2. Detention-area visitor room shall be made accessible.*

*3. At least one detention cell facility with supporting sanitary facilities shall be made accessible.*

*4. Courtroom areas, including the judge's chambers and bench, counsel tables, jury box, witness stand and public seating area shall be made accessible.*

**1105B.3.6 Miscellaneous general standards.**

*1. Circulation aisles and pedestrian ways shall be sized according to functional requirements and in no case shall be less than 36 inches (914 mm) in clear width.*

*2. Storage areas. The doorway providing access to all such areas shall not be less than 32 inches (813 mm) in clear width. Storage areas shall be made accessible in the number and dimensions provided in Section 1125B.*

**Section 1106B — ACCESSIBILITY FOR GROUP E OCCUPANCIES**

**1106B.1 General.** *Group E Occupancies shall be accessible as provided in this chapter. See also the general requirements listed in Section 1114B.1.1.*

**EXCEPTIONS:** *1. In existing buildings, when the enforcing agency determines that compliance with any regulation under this section would create an unreasonable hardship, an exception shall be granted when equivalent facilitation is provided.*

*2. In existing buildings, where the enforcing agency determines that, because of physical constraints, compliance with these regulations or equivalent facilitation would create an unreasonable hardship, these regulations shall not apply. See Section 101.17.11, Item 4.*

**1106B.2 Laboratory Rooms.** *Laboratory rooms shall have at least one work station and at least 5 percent of all work stations accessible to and usable by persons with disabilities.*

**EXCEPTION:** *Where the enforcing agency determines that it would create an unreasonable hardship to require compliance with these regulations for special-use rooms such as laboratory preparation rooms, supply rooms, small research laboratories, and areas containing specialized equipment not readily usable by persons with particular disabilities, such facilities need not comply with these regulations, except that a clear width of 32 inches (813 mm) shall be maintained into such rooms.*

**1106B.3 Teaching Facility Cubicles, Study Carrels, etc.** *Teaching facility cubicles, study carrels, etc., shall have 5 percent, but always at least one cubicle or carrel in each group (language, dental, audiovisual, typing, drafting, darkrooms, etc.) made accessible to and usable by persons with disabilities in compliance with Section 1118B, "Space Allowance and Reach Ranges" and Section 1122B, "Fixed or Built-in Seating, Tables, and Counters."*



#### **1106B.4 Library General Use Areas.**

1. **General.** Library general use areas such as those housing card files, book stacks, periodicals, reading and reference areas, information desks, circulation counters, etc., shall be made accessible to persons with disabilities.

2. **Open book stacks.** Open book stacks (those available for customer use) may be of normal height, and shall have main aisles no less than 44 inches (1118 mm) in width and side, range and end aisles no less than 36 inches (914 mm) in width.

**EXCEPTIONS:** 1. In existing buildings, shelving in the amount of not more than 15 percent of the total amount of library shelving may be located on an inaccessible mezzanine area.

2. In existing buildings, multitiered, closed book stacks (those restricted to employee use) are exempt from these accessibility standards.

3. **Height of book shelves.** Unless an attendant is available to assist persons with disabilities, all book shelving shall be located not more than 54 inches (1372 mm) above the floor.

4. **Card catalogs.** Reach heights at card catalogs and magazine displays shall comply with Section 1118B, with a height of 48 inches (1219 mm) preferred irrespective of reach allowed.

#### **Section 1107B — FACTORIES AND WAREHOUSES**

Factories and warehouses shall conform to the provisions of this section, Section 1103B.1 and Section 1103B.1, Exception 2, for multistory buildings.

**EXCEPTION:** In existing buildings, when the enforcing agency determines that compliance with any regulation under this section would create an unreasonable hardship, an exception shall be granted when equivalent facilitation is provided.

##### **1107B.1 Factories.**

1. Major or principal floor areas shall be made accessible.
2. Office areas shall be made accessible.
3. Sanitary facilities serving these areas shall be made accessible.

##### **1107B.2 Warehouses.**

1. Miscellaneous warehousing areas which are located on the floor nearest grade and those areas on other floors that are otherwise provided with access by level entry, ramp or elevator shall be made accessible.
2. Office areas shall be made accessible.
3. Sanitary facilities serving these areas shall be made accessible.

## **Section 1108B — ACCESSIBILITY FOR GROUP H OCCUPANCIES**

**1108B.1 General.** *Group H Occupancies shall be accessible as provided in this chapter. See also the general requirements listed in Section 1114B.1.1.*

**EXCEPTIONS:** *1. In existing Group H Occupancies, when the enforcing agency determines that compliance with any regulation under this section would create an unreasonable hardship, an exception shall be granted when equivalent facilitation and protection are provided.*

*2. In existing Group H Occupancies, the provisions of this section shall not apply when legal or physical constraints prevent compliance with these building standards or the provisions of equivalent facilitation without creating an unreasonable hardship. See Section 101.17.11, Item 4.*

**1108B.2 Accessible Sanitation Facilities.** *Accessible sanitation facilities in all Group H Occupancies shall be provided as specified in this chapter and the Division of the State Architect/Access Compliance requirements of the California Plumbing Code.*

**1108B.3 Accessible Routes.** *Entrances, stairs, ramps, doors, turnstiles, corridors, walks and sidewalks and hazards shall provide accessibility as specified in Section 1133B.*

**1108B.4 Accessible Floors and Levels.** *Accessible floors and levels shall comply with the requirements specified in this chapter.*

**1108B.5 Employee Work Areas.** *Employee work areas shall be accessible by means of a 36 inch–minimum (914 mm) aisle width and a 32 inch–minimum (813 mm) clear opening door width, as specified in Sections 1133B.6.1 and 1133B.6.2.*

**1108B.6 Accessible facilities covered in this chapter are those that are used by the public as customers, clients, visitors or which are potential places of employment.**

## **Section 1109B— ACCESSIBILITY FOR GROUP I OCCUPANCIES**

**1109B.1 General.** *All Group I Occupancies shall be accessible as provided in this chapter. See also the general requirements listed in Section 1114B.1.1.*

**EXCEPTION:** *In existing buildings, when the enforcing agency determines that compliance with any regulation under this section would create an unreasonable hardship, an exception shall be granted when equivalent facilitation is provided.*

**1109B.2 Entrance.** *At least one accessible entrance shall be protected from the weather by canopy or roof overhang. Such entrances shall incorporate a passenger loading zone. Passenger loading zones shall provide an access aisle at least 60 inches (1524 mm) wide and 20 feet (6096 mm) long adjacent and parallel to the vehicle pull-up space. If there are curbs between the access aisle and the vehicle pull-up space, then a curb ramp complying with Chapter 11B shall be provided. Vehicle standing spaces and access aisles shall be level with surface slopes not exceeding 1 unit vertical in 50 units horizontal (2% slope) in all directions. Minimum vertical clearance of 114 inches (2896 mm) at accessible passenger loading zones and along vehicle access routes to such areas from site entrances shall be provided.*

**EXCEPTION:** *Clinics and other medical facilities that are not intended for patient stays of 24 hours or more, and that are located above the first story of a building, and that do not have a dedicated entrance from the exterior of the building at the first story.*

**1109B.3 Patient Bedrooms and Toilet Rooms.** *Patient bedrooms and associated toilet facilities shall be made accessible as follows:*

*1. Long-term-care facilities, including skilled nursing facilities, intermediate care facilities, bed and care, and nursing homes shall have at least 50 percent of patient bedrooms and toilet rooms, and all public-use and common-use areas, accessible.*

*2. General-purpose hospitals, psychiatric facilities, and detoxification facilities shall have at least 10 percent of patient bedrooms and toilets, and all public-use and common-use areas, accessible.*

*3. Hospitals and rehabilitation facilities that specialize in treating conditions that affect mobility, or units within either that specialize in treating conditions that affect mobility, shall have all patient bedrooms and toilets and all public-use and common-use areas accessible.*

**1109B.4 Patient Bedroom Areas.** *Accessible patient bedrooms shall comply with the following requirements:*

*1. Each bedroom shall have a turning space measuring 60 inches (1524 mm) clear in diameter, or that is a T-shaped space complying with Figure 11B-12. In rooms with two beds, it is preferable that this space be located between beds.*

*2. Each bedroom shall have a minimum clear floor space of 36 inches (914 mm) along each side of the bed, and shall provide an accessible route to each side of the bed.*

*3. Each bedroom shall have an accessible door that complies with Section 1133B.2.*

**1109B.5 Patient Toilet Rooms.** *Patient toilet rooms required to be accessible shall comply with Section 1115B.*

**1109B.6 Diagnostic and Treatment Areas.** *Diagnostic and treatment areas and, where applicable, at least one dressing room, sanitary facility, etc., for each unit or suite, shall be made accessible.*

**1109B.7 Waiting Areas, Offices and Sanitary Facilities.** *Waiting areas, offices and sanitary facilities serving them shall be made accessible as covered in other portions of these standards.*

**1109B.8 Office and Suites.** *In buildings that house offices and suites of physicians, dentists, etc., all such offices or suites shall be made accessible, subject to other provisions of these regulations.*

## **Section 1110B — ACCESS FOR GROUP M OCCUPANCIES**

### **1110B.1 Sales**

**1110B.1.1 General areas.** *General sales, display and office areas together with related toilet rooms shall be made accessible.*

**1110B.1.2 Work areas.** *Sales employee work stations shall be located on accessible levels, and the customer side of sales or check-out stations shall be accessible. Employee work areas shall be sized and arranged to provide access to employees in wheelchairs.*

**1110B.1.3 Checkstands.** *In new construction, checkstands, including service counters requiring a surface for transactions, shall be made accessible by providing a 36-inch (914 mm) aisle on the customer side of the checkstand. Where quick checkstands are provided, at least one shall be accessible. Where regular checkstands are provided, the number of checkstands that are accessible shall be as shown in Table 11B-2.*

**TABLE 11B-2—CHECKSTANDS**

<b>NUMBER OF REGULAR CHECKSTANDS</b>	<b>NUMBER TO BE ACCESSIBLE</b>
<i>1 to 4</i>	<i>1</i>
<i>5 to 8</i>	<i>2</i>
<i>9 to 15</i>	<i>3</i>
<i>over 15</i>	<i>3 plus 20% of additional aisles</i>

*In new and existing construction, accessible checkstands shall provide a clear checkout aisle width of 36 inches (914 mm) with a maximum adjoining counter height not exceeding 38 inches (965 mm) above the finish floor. The top of the counter lip shall not exceed 40 inches (1016 mm) above the finish floor. Accessible checkstands shall always be open to customers with disabilities and shall be identified by a sign clearly visible to those in wheelchairs. The sign shall display the international symbol of accessibility in white on a blue background and shall state “This checkstand to be open at all times for customers with disabilities.”*

*In existing buildings, at least one checkout aisle shall be accessible in facilities with less than 5,000 square feet (465 m<sup>2</sup>) of selling space. In facilities of 5,000 square feet (465 m<sup>2</sup>) or more of selling space, at least one of each design of checkout aisle shall be made accessible when altered until the number of accessible checkout aisles of each design equals the number required in new construction.*

**NOTE:** *Examples of checkout aisles of different design include those which are specifically designed to serve different functions. Different design includes, but is not limited to, the following features: length of belt or no belt, or permanent signage designating the aisle as an express lane.*

**1110B.1.4 Point-of-sale machines.** *All point-of-sale machines used by customers for the primary purpose of executing transactions between the business entity and the customer shall comply with Section 1117B.7*

**1110B.1.5 Turnstiles.** *See Section 1133B.2.3.4.*

**1110B.1.6 Theft-prevention barriers.** *Where shopping cart theft prevention barriers are used, they shall conform to the following requirements:*

*1. Each entrance and exit provided for public use shall be accessible to and usable by persons with disabilities.*

*2. Shopping cart barriers located at a public entrance or exit shall be designed to provide a clear, unobstructed opening at least 32 inches (813 mm) in width for ingress and egress of persons with disabilities.*

*3. Where gates are used, they shall open in the direction of travel, provide a clear unobstructed opening 32 inches (813 mm) in width and be maintained unlocked during business hours. Gates shall not operate a publicly audible alarm system or require more than 5 foot-pounds of force (22.2 N·m).*

*4. Where a clear unobstructed opening is provided, a level area is required on both sides of the clear opening or gate which extends a minimum of 44 inches (1118 mm) on each side of the opening and is at least 48 inches (1219 mm) in width.*

*5. Where a gate is used, the level area on both sides of the clear opening or gate shall be a minimum of 60 inches (1524 mm) in width and extend a minimum of 60 inches (1524 mm) (measured from the gate in a closed position) in the direction of the gate swing. The level area opposite the gate swing shall be a minimum of 48 inches (1219 mm) in width and extend a minimum of 42 inches (1067 mm).*

*6. Where a gate is used, the bottom of the gate shall be within 3 inches (76 mm) of the surface of the path of travel. The surface of the gate on each side shall be smooth to present no hazard to persons with disabilities using the gate and shall be structurally adequate to allow it to be opened with the wheelchair footpedals.*

*7. The path of travel to and through the clear opening or gate shall be designed to prevent barriers from obstructing it and shall be continuously maintained unobstructed during business hours. Also, the design shall specifically prevent parked vehicles from obstructing ingress and egress.*

*8. Interior and exterior pedestrian traffic barriers (posts, rails, turnstiles, etc.) shall allow unobstructed travel for persons with disabilities through a 32-inch (813 mm) clear opening.*

**1110B.1.7 Fitting and dressing rooms.** *Where fitting or dressing rooms are provided for male or female customers, patients, employees, or the general public, 5 percent, but never less than one, of dressing rooms for each type of use in each cluster of dressing rooms shall be accessible.*

- *Entry doors shall conform to the requirements of Section 1133B.2 and aisles leading to such doors shall conform to Sections 1133B.6.1 and 1133B.6.2.*
- *The bottom of mirrors provided for use by persons with disabilities shall not be greater than 20 inches (508 mm) from the floor. Mirrors to be used by persons with disabilities shall be full-length, measuring at least 18 inches (457 mm) wide by 54 inches (1372 mm) high, and shall be mounted in a position affording a view to a person on the bench as well as to a person in a standing position.*
- *Clothing hooks shall be located not greater than 48 inches (1219 mm) from the floor.*
- *Every accessible dressing room shall have a 24-inch by 48-inch (610 mm by 1219 mm) bench fixed to the wall along the longer dimension. The bench shall be mounted 17 to 19 inches (432 to 483 mm) above the finish floor. Clear floor space shall be provided alongside the bench to allow a person using a wheelchair to make a parallel transfer onto the bench. The structural strength of the bench and attachments shall comply with Section 1115B.8. The minimum clear space within the room shall be 60 inches (1524 mm) in width and length. No door shall encroach into the required space.*

**EXCEPTIONS:** *1. Minor specialized display areas that do not exceed 200 square feet (18.6 m<sup>2</sup>) in floor area and to which the general public is excluded need not be made accessible.*

*2. Offices in sales facilities that do not exceed 5,000 square feet (465 m<sup>2</sup>) in total area, that are located on nonaccessible levels, need not be made accessible.*

## **1110B.2 Miscellaneous General Standards.**

**1110B.2.1 Circulation.** *Circulation aisles and pedestrian ways shall be sized according to functional requirements and in no case shall be less than 36 inches (914 mm) in clear width.*

**1110B.2.2 Storage areas.** *The doorway providing access to all such areas shall not be less than 32 inches (813 mm) in clear width. Storage areas shall be made accessible in the number and dimensions provided in Section 1125B.*

## **Section 1111B — ACCESSIBILITY FOR GROUP R OCCUPANCIES**

**1111B.1 General.** *Group R Occupancies shall be accessible or adaptable as provided in this chapter. Public–use and common–use areas serving adaptable guest and/or dwelling units shall be accessible. See also the general accessibility requirements as listed in Sections 1114B.1.1 and 1111B.*

**EXCEPTION:** *When the enforcing agency determines that compliance with any regulation under this section would create an unreasonable hardship, an exception shall be granted when equivalent facilitation is provided.*

**1111B.2 Public– and Common–use Rooms or Areas.** *Public– and common–use rooms and similar areas shall be made accessible to people with disabilities, subject to specific provisions contained in other portions of these regulations. See also general requirements listed in Section 1114B.1.1.*

**1111B.3 Recreational Facilities.** *When recreational facilities are provided, including swimming pools, they shall comply with Sections 1104B.4.3 and 1132B.2.*

**1111B.4 Hotels, Motels, Inns, Dormitories, Resorts, Homeless Shelters, Halfway Houses, Transient Group Homes and Similar Places of Transient Lodging.** *Hotels, motels, inns, dormitories, resorts, and similar places of transient lodging shall provide access for persons with disabilities in accordance with the provisions of the accessibility requirements of this California Building Code, except as herein provided.*

**1111B.4.1 Available range of accommodations.** *Accessible guest rooms or suites shall be dispersed among the various classes of sleeping accommodations to provide a range of options applicable to room sizes, costs, amenities provided, and the number of beds provided.*

**1111B.4.2 Guest rooms and suites.** *Places of transient lodging shall incorporate the accessibility requirements of this code as modified by this chapter in at least one guest room or dormitory room together with their sanitary facilities in conformance with Table 11B–3. All accessible sleeping rooms or suites required by Table 11B–3 shall comply with the requirements of Section 1111B.4 for hearing impaired guests.*



**EXCEPTION:** When guest rooms are being altered in an existing facility, or portion thereof, subject to the requirements of this section, at least one guest room or suite that complies with the accessibility requirements of this code as modified by this chapter shall be provided for each 25 guest rooms, or fraction thereof, of rooms being altered until the number of such rooms provided equals the number required to be accessible in Table 11B-3. In addition, at least one guest room or suite that complies with the requirements of Section 1111B.4.5 shall be provided for each 25 guest rooms, or fraction thereof, of rooms being altered until the number of such rooms equals the number required to be accessible in Table 11B-4.

**1111B.4.3 Access to beds.** Accessible sleeping rooms shall have a 36-inch (914 mm) clear width maneuvering space located along both sides of a bed, except that where two beds are provided, this requirement can be met by providing a 36-inch-wide (914 mm) maneuvering space located between the beds.

**1111B.4.4 Kitchen facilities.** When accommodations are provided with kitchen units, accessible kitchens shall be provided to those accommodations required to be accessible in conformance with Table 11B-3, and shall meet the requirements of Section 1112A.

**1111B.4.5 Visual alarms, notification devices and telephones for persons with hearing impairments.** In addition to those accessible sleeping rooms and suites required by Section 1111B.4.2 to comply with this section, additional sleeping rooms and suites shall be provided with the following features in conformance with Table 11B-4 and as follows:

**1111B.4.5.1 Visual alarms.** Auxiliary visual alarms shall be provided and shall comply with Section 1114B.2.4.

**1111B.4.5.2 Visual notification devices.** Visual notification devices shall also be provided in units, sleeping rooms and suites to alert room occupants of incoming telephone calls and a door knock or bell. Notification devices shall not be connected to auxiliary visual alarm signal appliances.

**1111B.4.5.3 Telephones.** Permanently installed telephones shall have volume controls complying with Section 1117B.2.8; an accessible electrical outlet within 48 inches (1219 mm) of a telephone connection shall be provided to facilitate the use of a text telephone.

**1111B.4.6 Bathrooms in hotels, motels, inns, dormitories, resorts, homeless shelters, halfway houses, transient group homes and similar places of transient lodging.** Required accessible bathrooms for places of transient lodging shall comply with the following provisions:

**EXCEPTION:** *Hotel and motel bathrooms beyond those specified in Section 1111B.4 need not comply with the provisions of this section or other accessibility provision of the California Building, Electrical, and Plumbing Codes if they provide the following features:*

*1. All bathroom fixtures are in a location that allows a person using a wheelchair measuring 30 inches by 48 inches (762 mm by 1219 mm) to touch the wheelchair to any lavatory, urinal, water closet, tub, sauna, shower stall and any other similar sanitary installation, if provided.*

*2. All bathroom entrance doors have a clear opening width of 32 inches (813 mm) and shall be either sliding doors or shall be hung to swing in the direction of egress from the bathroom.*

**1.Doors.** *Doors to accessible bathrooms shall comply with Section 1133B.2. Doors shall not swing into the floor space required for any fixture.*

**2.Clear floor space.** *All fixtures and controls shall be on an accessible route. There must be within the bathroom a clear floor space measuring 30 inches by 60 inches (762 mm by 1524 mm). The clear floor spaces at fixtures and controls, the accessible route, and the turning space may overlap.*

**3.Water closets.** *If a toilet stall is provided, it shall comply with Section 1115B.7.1 or 1115B.7.2, its water closet shall comply with Section 1115B of this code and Section 1502.0 of the California Plumbing Code.*

**4.Lavatory and mirrors.** *If a lavatory and/or mirror is provided, it shall comply with Section 1115B.9 of this code and Section 1504.0 of the California Plumbing Code.*

**5.Controls and dispensers.** *If controls, dispensers, receptacles, or other types of equipment are provided, then at least one of each shall be on an accessible route and shall comply with Section 1117B.6, "Controls and Operating Mechanisms."*

**6.Bathing and shower facilities** *.If tubs or showers are provided, then at least one accessible tub that complies with Section 1115B.6.1 of this code and Section 1506.0 of the California Plumbing Code or, at least one accessible shower that complies with Section 1115B.6.2 of this code and Section 1505.0 of the California Plumbing Code shall be provided.*

**7.Toilet facilities.** *Toilet facilities shall comply with Section 1111B.4.6, as modified for hotel, motel and dormitory accommodations.*

**1111B.4.7Dormitory rooms.** *Dormitory rooms beyond those specified herein shall comply with the adaptability requirements of Section 1111B.5.*

**111B.5 Buildings and Complexes Containing Publicly Funded Dwelling Units.**

**111B.5.1 General.** *Buildings and complexes containing publicly funded dwelling units shall be accessible as required by Chapter 11A, Housing Accessibility, except that scoping requirements for covered multifamily dwellings include one or more publicly funded dwelling units, and is required to comply with Division IV—Accessibility for Existing Buildings, beginning with Section 1134B.*

**TABLE 11B-3—ADDITIONAL ACCESSIBILITY REQUIRED  
IN GUEST ROOMS OR SUITES\***

<b>TOTAL NUMBER OF ROOMS</b>	<b>FULLY ACCESSIBLE ROOMS</b>	<b>PLUS ADDITIONAL ACCESSIBLE ROOMS WITH ROLL-IN SHOWERS</b>
<i>1 to 25</i>	<i>1</i>	<i>0</i>
<i>26 to 50</i>	<i>2</i>	<i>0</i>
<i>51 to 75</i>	<i>3</i>	<i>1</i>
<i>76 to 100</i>	<i>4</i>	<i>1</i>
<i>101 to 150</i>	<i>5</i>	<i>2</i>
<i>151 to 200</i>	<i>6</i>	<i>2</i>
<i>201 to 300</i>	<i>7</i>	<i>3</i>
<i>301 to 400</i>	<i>8</i>	<i>4</i>
<i>401 to 500</i>	<i>9</i>	<i>4</i>
<i>501 to 1,000</i>	<i>2% of total</i>	<i>4 plus 1 for each additional 100 over 400</i>
<i>1,001 and over</i>	<i>20 plus 1 for each 100 over 1,000</i>	

*\*Note: Provisions of this chapter are additional modifications to general requirements listed in Section 1114B.1.1.*

**TABLE 11B-4 — ADDITIONAL ACCESSIBILITY REQUIRED FOR HEARING IMPAIRED IN GUEST ROOMS\***

<b>TOTAL NUMBER OF ROOMS</b>	<b>NUMBER OF ROOMS EQUIPPED FOR HEARING IMPAIRED</b>
<i>1 to 25</i>	<i>1</i>
<i>26 to 50</i>	<i>2</i>
<i>51 to 75</i>	<i>3</i>
<i>76 to 100</i>	<i>4</i>
<i>101 to 150</i>	<i>5</i>
<i>151 to 200</i>	<i>6</i>
<i>201 to 300</i>	<i>7</i>
<i>301 to 400</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>401 to 500</i>	<i>9</i>
<i>501 to 1,000</i>	<i>2% of total</i>
<i>1,001 and over</i>	<i>20 plus 1 for each 100 over 1,000</i>

*\*Note: Provisions of this chapter are additional modifications to general requirements listed in Section 1114B.1.1.*

**Section 1112B — ACCESSIBILITY FOR GROUP S OCCUPANCIES**

*(Reserved for future use.)*

**Section 1113B — ACCESSIBILITY FOR GROUP U OCCUPANCIES**

*(Reserved for future use.)*

**Section 1114B — FACILITY ACCESSIBILITY**

*When buildings are required to be accessible, buildings and facilities shall be accessible as provided in this section and in those sections listed in Section 1114B.1.1.*

**1114B.1 Design and Construction.**

**1114B.1.1 General.** *When accessibility is required by this chapter, it shall be designed and constructed to meet the minimum requirements of the following sections:*

*Chapter 11B, Accessibility; Division I, New Buildings; Division II, Site Accessibility; Division III, Accessibility for Entrances, Exits and Paths of Travel; and Division IV, Accessibility for Existing Buildings*

*Entrances — [for HCD 1/AC] Section 1120A.1; [for DSA/AC] Section 1133B*

*Doors — [for HCD 1/AC] Section 1120A.2; [for DSA/AC] Section 1133B.2*

*Corridors — [for HCD 1/AC] Section 1120A.3; [for DSA/AC] Section 1133B.3*

*Stairways — [for HCD 1/AC] Section 1120A.4; [for DSA/AC] Section 1133B.4*

*Ramps — [for HCD 1/AC] Section 1120A.5; [for DSA/AC] Section 1133B.5*

*Aisles — [for DSA/AC] Section 1133B.6*

*Walks and Sidewalks — [for HCD 1/AC] Section 1120A.7; [for DSA/AC] Section 1133B.7*

*Hazards — [for HCD 1/AC] Section 1120A.7; [for DSA/AC] Section 1133B.8*

*Elevators — [for DSA/AC & HCD 1/AC] Section 3003*

*Special Wheelchair Lifts — [for HCD 1/AC] Section 1110A.2; [for DSA/AC] Section 1116B.2*

*Alarms — Chapter 35.*

*See also Part 3, California Electrical Code, and Part 5, California Plumbing Code.*

**1114B.1.2 Accessible route of travel.** *When a building, or portion of a building, is required to be accessible or adaptable, an accessible route of travel shall be provided to all portions of the building, to accessible building entrances and between the building and the public way. Except within an individual dwelling unit, an accessible route of travel shall not pass through kitchens, storage rooms, restrooms, closets or other spaces used for similar purposes. At least one accessible route within the boundary of the site shall be provided from public transportation stops, accessible parking and accessible passenger loading zones, and public streets or sidewalks, to the accessible building entrance they serve. The accessible route shall, to the maximum extent feasible, coincide with the route for the general public. At least one accessible route shall connect accessible buildings, facilities, elements and spaces that are on the same site. At least one accessible route shall connect accessible building or facility entrances with all accessible spaces and elements and with all accessible dwelling units within the building or facility. An accessible route shall connect at least one accessible entrance of each accessible dwelling unit with those exterior and interior spaces and facilities that serve the accessible dwelling unit.*

*Where more than one route of travel is provided, all routes shall be accessible.*

**EXCEPTION:** *Where an elevator is provided for vertical access, only one elevator is required. Where more than one elevator is provided, all elevators shall be accessible.*

*See Section 1114B.1.1 for a list of code sections applicable to accessible route of travel.*

**1114B.1.3 Primary entry access.** *All entrances and all exterior ground-level exits shall be accessible in compliance with Section 1133B.1.1.*

**1114B.1.4 Signs.** *See Section 1117B.5.*

**1114B.1.5 Adaptable dwelling units.** *See Section 1111B.*

**1114B.2 Egress and Areas for Evacuation Assistance.**

**1114B.2.1 [For SFM] General.** *In buildings or portions of buildings required to be accessible, accessible means of egress shall be provided in the same number as required for exits by Chapter 10. When an exit required by Chapter 10 is not accessible, an area for evacuation assistance shall be provided.*

*Areas for evacuation assistance shall comply with the requirements of this code and shall adjoin an accessible route of travel complying with this code.*

**EXCEPTIONS:** *1. Areas of evacuation assistance are not required in buildings or facilities having a supervised automatic sprinkler system.*

*2. In alterations of existing buildings, areas of evacuation assistance are not required.*

**1114B.2.2[For SFM]Areas for evacuation assistance.**

**1114B.2.2. 1 [For SFM] Location and construction.** *An area for evacuation assistance shall be one of the following:*

*1.[For SFM]A portion of a stairway landing within a smokeproof enclosure, complying with Section 1005.3.3.*

*2.[For SFM]A portion of an exterior exit balcony located immediately adjacent to an exit stairway when the exterior exit balcony complies with Section 1006.3. Openings to the exterior of the building located within 20 feet (6096 mm) of the area for evacuation assistance shall be protected with fire assemblies having a three-fourths-hour fire-protection rating.*

*3.[For SFM]A portion of a one-hour fire-resistive corridor complying with Section 1004.3.4 located immediately adjacent to an exit enclosure.*

*4.[For SFM]A vestibule located immediately adjacent to an exit enclosure and constructed to the same fire-resistive standards as required by Section 1004.3.4.*

*5.[For SFM]A portion of a stairway landing within an exit enclosure which is vented to the exterior and is separated from the interior of the building by not less than one-hour fire-resistive door assemblies.*

6.[For SFM]When approved by the building official, an area or room which is separated from other portions of the building by a smoke barrier. Smoke barriers shall have a fire-resistive rating of not less than one hour and shall completely enclose the area or room. Doors in the smoke barrier shall be tightfitting smoke- and draft-control assemblies having a fire-protection rating of not less than 20 minutes and shall be self-closing or automatic closing. The area or room shall be provided with an exit directly to an exit enclosure. When the room or area exits into an exit enclosure which is required to be of more than one-hour fire-resistive construction, the room or area shall have the same fire-resistive construction, including the same opening protection, as required for the adjacent exit enclosure.

7.[For SFM]An elevator lobby complying with Section 1114B.2.3.

**1114B.2.2.2 [For SFM] Size.** Each area for evacuation assistance shall provide at least two accessible areas that are not less than 30 inches by 48 inches (762 mm by 1219 mm). The area for evacuation assistance shall not encroach on any required exit width. The total number of such 30-inch by 48-inch (762 mm by 1219 mm) areas per story shall not be less than one for every 200 persons of calculated occupant load served by the area for evacuation assistance.

**EXCEPTION:** The building official may reduce the minimum number of 30-inch by 48-inch (762 mm by 1219 mm) areas to one for each area for evacuation assistance on floors where the occupant load is less than 200.

**1114B.2.2.3 [For SFM] Adjacent stairway width.** Each stairway adjacent to an area for evacuation assistance shall have a minimum clear width of 48 inches (1219 mm) between handrails.

**1114B.2.2.4 [For SFM] Two-way communication.**

**1114B.2.2.4.1 [For SFM]** A telephone with controlled access to a public telephone system or another method of two-way communication shall be provided between each area of refuge and the primary entry. The fire department may approve a location other than the primary entry.

**1114B.2.2.4.2 [For DSA/AC]** A method of two-way communication with both visible and audible communication shall be provided between each area of evacuation assistance and the primary entry. A button in the area of rescue assistance shall activate both a light in the area of rescue assistance indicating that rescue has been requested and a light at the primary entry indicating that rescue is being requested. A button at the primary entry shall activate both a light at the primary entry and a light in the area of rescue assistance indicating that the request has been received.

A telephone with controlled access to a public telephone system or another method of two-way communication shall be provided between each area of refuge and the primary entry. The fire department may approve a location other than the primary entry.

**1114B.2.2.5 [For SFM] Identification.** *Each area for evacuation assistance shall be identified by a sign which states AREA FOR EVACUATION ASSISTANCE and the international symbol of accessibility. The sign shall be illuminated when exit sign illumination is required. In each area for evacuation assistance, instructions on the use of the area under emergency conditions shall be posted adjoining the two-way communication system.*

**1114B.2.3 [For SFM] Area for evacuation assistance, high-rise alternative.** *Within a building of any height or occupancy constructed in accordance with the requirements of Sections 403.1 through 403.10, an area for evacuation assistance may be located in the elevator lobby when:*

*1. The area for evacuation assistance complies with the requirements for size, two-way communication and identification as specified in Section 1114B.2.2; and*

*2. Elevator shafts and adjacent lobbies are pressurized as required for smoke-proof enclosures in Section 1005.3.3. Such pressurization system shall be activated by smoke detectors on each floor located in a manner approved by the building official. Pressurization equipment and its ductwork within the building shall be separated from other portions of the building by a minimum two-hour fire-resistive construction.*

**1114B.2.4 [For SFM] Alarms/emergency warning systems/accessibility.** *If emergency warning systems are required, they shall activate a means of warning the hearing impaired. Emergency warning systems as part of the fire-alarm system shall be designed and installed in accordance with NFPA 72 as amended in Chapter 35.*

## **Section 1115B — BATHING AND TOILET FACILITIES**

**1115B.1 General** *.Sanitary facilities that serve buildings, facilities or portions of buildings or facilities that are required by these standards to be accessible to persons with disabilities, shall conform to the following requirements, except as specifically exempted in other portions of this code.*

**NOTES:** *1. See Section 1502.0, Part 5, Title 24, California Plumbing Code, for additional sanitation standards.*

*2. See Section 1111B.4.6 and Chapter 11A for bathrooms in residential occupancies.*

**EXCEPTION:** *In existing buildings or facilities, when the enforcing agency determines that compliance with any building standard under this section would create an unreasonable hardship, an exception to such standard shall be granted when equivalent facilitation is provided. When equivalent facilitation is used, the following criteria shall apply:*

*1. All sanitary facilities are not required to comply with these building standards when the enforcing agency determines that sanitary facilities are accessible to and usable by persons with disabilities within a reasonable distance of accessible areas.*



2. *Equivalent facilitation would provide for either a lateral– or front–transfer toilet stall. See Figure 11B–1C.*

3. *Equivalent facilitation would require doors to have a clear, unobstructed opening of at least 30 inches (762 mm).*

**1115B.2 Toilet Facilities.** *Where separate facilities are provided for nondisabled persons of each sex, separate facilities shall be provided for persons with disabilities of each sex also. Where unisex facilities are provided for persons without disabilities, at least one unisex facility shall be provided for persons with disabilities within close proximity to the nonaccessible facility. (See Figure 11B–1A.)*

**1115B.3 Where Used by Children.** *Where facilities are to be used solely by small children, the specific heights may be adjusted to meet their accessibility needs. See Table 1115B–1 for suggested mounting heights.*

**1115B.4 Passageways.** *Passageways leading to sanitary facilities shall have a clear access. All doorways leading to such sanitary facilities shall have:*

**1115B.4.1 Clear opening.** *A clear unobstructed opening width of 32 inches (813 mm).*

**1115B.4.2 Level area.** *A level and clear area for a minimum depth of 60 inches (1524 mm) in the direction of the door swing as measured at right angles to the plane of the door in its closed position, and 44 inches (1118 mm) where the door swings away from the level and clear area. The width of the level area on the side to which the door swings shall extend 24 inches (610 mm) past the strike edge of the door for exterior doors and 18 inches (457 mm) past the strike edge for interior doors.*

**1115B.5 Identification Symbols.** *Doorways leading to men’s sanitary facilities shall be identified by an equilateral triangle  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch thick (6.4 mm) with edges 12 inches (305 mm) long and a vertex pointing upward. Women’s sanitary facilities shall be identified by a circle,  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch thick (6.4 mm) and 12 inches (305 mm) in diameter. Unisex sanitary facilities shall be identified by a circle  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch thick (6.4 mm), 12 inches (305 mm) in diameter with a  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch thick (6.4 mm) triangle superimposed on the circle and within the 12 inch (305 mm) diameter. These geometric symbols shall be centered on the door at a height of 60 inches (1524 mm) and their color and contrast shall be distinctly different from the color and contrast of the door.*

**NOTE:** *See also Section 1117B.5.9 for additional signage requirements applicable to sanitary facilities.*

**1115B.6 Bathing Facilities.** *Where facilities for bathing are provided for the public, clients or employees, including showers, bathtubs or lockers, at least one such facility, and not less than 1 percent of all facilities, shall conform to the following standards unless specifically exempted by other portions of these regulations.*

**1115B.6.1 Bathtubs.** *Bathtubs required to be accessible shall comply with this section.*

**NOTE:** *See also Section 1506.0, Part 5, Title 24, California Plumbing Code*

**1.Floor space.** *Clear floor space at bathtubs shall be as shown in Figure 11B-8.*

**2.Seat.** *An in-tub seat or a seat at the head end of the tub shall be provided as shown in Figures 11B-8 and 11B-9B. The structural strength of seats and their attachments shall comply with Section 1115B.8.3. Seats shall be mounted securely and shall not slip during use.*

**3.Grab bars.** *Grab bars complying with Sections 1115B.8.2, 1115B.8.3 and 1115B.8.4 shall be provided as shown in Figures 11B-9A and 11B-9B.*

**4.Controls.** *Faucets and other controls shall be located as shown in Figure 11B-9B. They shall be operable with one hand and shall not require tight grasping, pinching or twisting of the wrist. The force required to activate controls shall be no greater than 5 pounds (22.2 N).*

**5.Shower unit.** *A shower spray unit with a hose at least 60 inches (1524 mm) long that can be used both as a fixed shower head and as a hand-held shower shall be provided.*

**6.Bathtub enclosures.** *If provided, enclosures for bathtubs shall not obstruct controls or transfer from wheelchairs onto bathtub seats or into tubs. Enclosures on bathtubs shall not have tracks mounted on their rims.*

**1115B.6.2 Showers.** *Showers shall conform to the following requirements.*

**1115B.6.2.1 Size.** *Showers shall be 60 inches (1524 mm) minimum in width between wall surfaces and 30 inches (762 mm) minimum in depth with a full opening width on the long side, or 42 inches (1067 mm) in width between wall surfaces and 48 inches (1219 mm) minimum in depth with an entrance opening of 42 inches (1067 mm). As an alternative, showers 60 inches (1524 mm) minimum in width may be 36 inches (914 mm) minimum in depth as long as the entrance opening width is a minimum 36 inches (914 mm).*

**1115B.6.2.2 Thresholds.** *When a threshold or recessed drop is permitted, it shall be a maximum of 1/2 inch (13 mm) in height and shall be beveled or sloped at an angle not exceeding 45 degrees (100 percent gradient) from the horizontal.*

**1115B.6.2.3** *Where, within the same functional area, two or more accessible showers are provided, there shall be at least one shower constructed opposite hand from the other or others (i.e., one left-hand controls versus right-hand controls).*

**1115B.6.2.4 Accessories.** *Shower accessories shall include:*

**1115B.6.2.4.1 Water controls.** *Water controls of a single-lever design shall be located on the side wall of the compartment adjacent to the seat and mounted at 40 inches (1016 mm) [plus or minus 1 inch (25 mm) tolerance] above the shower floor, and the centerline of the controls shall be within a reach range of no less than 18 inches (457 mm) and no more than 24 inches (610 mm) from the rear edge of the seat.*

**1115B.6.2.4.2 Hand-held sprayer unit.** *A flexible hand-held sprayer unit with a hose at least 60 inches (1524 mm) long shall be provided within reach range of the seat at a distance not to exceed 27 inches (686 mm) horizontally measured from the rear seat edge to the centerline of the mounting bracket. This unit shall be mounted at a maximum height of 48 inches (1219 mm) [plus or minus 1 inch (25 mm) tolerance] above the shower floor.*

**1115B.6.2.4.3 Sprayer unit alternative.** *Except within guest rooms and suites in hotels, motels and similar transient lodging establishments where accessible shower facilities are provided in areas subject to excessive vandalism, in lieu of providing the fixed flexible hose, two wall-mounted shower heads shall be installed. Each shower head shall be installed so that it can be operated independently of the other and shall have swivel angle adjustments, both vertically and horizontally. One shower head shall be located at a height of 48 inches (1219 mm) [plus or minus 1 inch (25 mm) tolerance] above the floor.*

**1115B.6.2.4.4 Floor slope.** *The maximum slope of the floor shall be 2 percent per foot in any direction. Where drains are provided, grate openings shall be a minimum of  $1/4$  inch (6.4 mm) and located flush with the floor surface.*

**1115B.6.2.4.5 Shower fixtures.** *Shower accessories shall include:*

*1. A folding seat located within 27 inches (686 mm) of the controls mounted 18 inches (457 mm) above the floor, and with a minimum space of 1 inch (25 mm) and maximum space of  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inches (38 mm) allowed between the edge of the seat and any wall. When folded, the seat shall not extend more than 6 inches (152 mm) from the mounting wall. See Figures 11B-2A, 11B-2B, 11B-2C and 11B-2D.*

*2. Grab bars located on walls adjacent to and opposite the seat. Grab bars also comply with the diameter, loading and projection requirements of Sections 1115B.8.2, 1115B.8.3 and 1115B.8.4. Grab bars shall be mounted between a minimum of 33 inches (838 mm) and a maximum of 36 inches (914 mm) above the shower floor with an L-shaped grab bar mounted on walls opposite and adjacent to the front edge of the seat, but not extended to include that portion of wall over the seat. See Figure 11B-2A or 11B-2B.*

**1115B.6.2.4.6 Soap dish.** When a soap dish is provided, it shall be located on the control wall at a maximum height of 40 inches (1016 mm) above the shower floor, and within reach limits from the seat.

**1115B.6.2.5 Enclosures.** Enclosures, when provided for shower stalls, shall not obstruct transfer from wheelchairs onto shower seats.

**NOTE:** See Figures 11B-2A, 11B-2B, 11B-2C and 11B-2D.

**1115B.6.3 Open showers.** Where no separate shower compartments are provided, the shower for persons with disabilities shall be located in a corner with L-shaped grab bars extending along two adjacent walls with a folding seat adjacent to the shower controls. See Figures 11B-2A, 11B-2B, 11B-2C and 11B-2D.

**1115B.6.4 Lockers.** Where lockers are provided for the public, clients, employees, members or participants, at least one locker and not less than 1 percent of all lockers shall be made accessible to persons with disabilities. A path of travel not less than 36 inches (914 mm) in clear width shall be provided to these lockers.

## **1115B.7 Toilet Facilities.**

**1115B.7.1 Multiple-accommodation toilet facilities.** Multiple-accommodation toilet facilities shall have the following:

**NOTE:** See definition in Chapter 2.

1. **Wheelchair clearance.** A clear space measured from the floor to a height of 27 inches (686 mm) above the floor, within the sanitary facility room, of sufficient size to inscribe a circle with a diameter not less than 60 inches (1524 mm), or a clear space 56 inches by 63 inches (1422 mm by 1600 mm) in size. Doors other than the door to the accessible water closet compartment in any position may encroach into this space by not more than 12 inches (305 mm) other than the door to the handicapped/physically disabled toilet compartment in any position may encroach into this space by not more than 12 inches (305 mm).

2. **Clear space at fixtures.** Doors shall not swing into the floor space required for any fixture.

3. **Accessible water closet compartment.** A water closet fixture located in a compartment shall provide a minimum 28 inch-wide (711 mm) clear space from a fixture or a minimum 32 inch-wide (813 mm) clear space from a wall at one side of the water closet. The other side of the water closet shall provide 18 inches (457 mm) from the centerline of the water closet to the wall. A minimum 48-inch-long (1219 mm) clear space shall be provided in front of the water closet if the compartment has an end-opening door (facing the water closet). A minimum 60 inch-long (1524 mm) clear space shall be provided in a compartment with the door located at the side. Grab bars shall not project more than 3 inches (76 mm) into the clear spaces as specified above.

**4. *Compartment doors.*** *Water closet compartment shall be equipped with a door that has an automatic-closing device, and shall have a clear, unobstructed opening width of 32 inches (813 mm) when located at the end and 34 inches (864 mm) when located at the side with the door positioned at an angle of 90 degrees from its closed position. When standard compartment doors are used, with a minimum 9-inch (229 mm) clearance for footrests underneath and a self-closing device, clearance at the strike edge as specified in Section 1133B.2.4.3 is not required.*

*The inside and outside of the compartment door shall be equipped with a loop or U-shaped handle immediately below the latch. The latch shall be flip-over style, sliding, or other hardware not requiring the user to grasp or twist. Except for door-opening widths and door swings, a clear, unobstructed access of not less than 44 inches (1118 mm) shall be provided to water closet compartments designed for use by persons with disabilities and the space immediately in front of a water closet compartment shall not be less than 48 inches (1219 mm) as measured at right angles to compartment door in its closed position.*

**5. *Large toilet rooms.*** *Where six or more stalls are provided within a multiple-accommodation toilet room, at least one stall shall comply with Items 2 and 3, and at least one additional stall shall be 36 inches (914 mm) wide with an outward swinging self-closing door and parallel grab bars complying with Sections 1115B.8.2, 1115B.8.3 and 1115B.8.4.*

**1115B.7.2 *Single-accommodation toilet facilities.*** *There shall be sufficient space in the toilet room for a wheelchair measuring 30 inches (762 mm) wide by 48 inches (1219 mm) long to enter the room and permit the door to close. There shall be in the room a clear floor space of at least 60 inches (1524 mm) in diameter, or a T-shaped space complying with Figure 11B-12 (a) and (b). No door shall encroach into this space for more than 12 inches (305 mm) except for the panel door to any water closet compartment if there is one. (See Figure 11B-1A). The water closet shall be located in a space which provides a minimum 28-inch-wide (711 mm) clear space from a fixture or a minimum 32-inch-wide (813 mm) clear space from a wall at one side. The other side shall provide 18 inches (457 mm) from the centerline of the water closet to the wall. A minimum 48 inches (1219 mm) of clear space shall be provided in front of the water closet. All doors, fixtures and controls shall be on an accessible route. The minimum clear width of an accessible route shall be 36 inches (914 mm) except at doors (see Section 1133B.2). If a person in a wheelchair must make a turn around an obstruction, the minimum clear width of the accessible route shall be as shown in Figure 11B-5E. (See also Figure 11B-1A.)*

**NOTE:** *For bathrooms serving residential occupancies, see Section 1111B.4.6 and Chapter 11A.*

**EXCEPTION:** *In an existing building, a single-accommodation toilet facility may have the water closet fixture located in an area which provides a clear space of not less than 36*

### **1115B.8 Grab Bars.**

**1115B.8.1 Location.** *Grab bars located on each side, or one side and the back of the accessible toilet stall or compartment, shall be securely attached 33 inches (838 mm) above and parallel to the floor, except that where a tank-type toilet is used which obstructs placement at 33 inches (838 mm), the grab bar may be as high as 36 inches (914 mm). Grab bars shall be at least 42 inches (1067 mm) long with the front end positioned 24 inches (610 mm) in front of the water closet stool. Grab bars at the back shall not be less than 36 inches (914 mm) long. See Figures 11B-1A, 11B-1B and 11B-1C.*

**1115B.8.2 Diameter or width.** *The diameter or width of the gripping surfaces of a grab bar shall be 1<sup>1</sup>/<sub>4</sub> inches to 1<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub> inches (32 mm to 38 mm) or the shape shall provide an equivalent gripping surface. If grab bars are mounted adjacent to a wall, the space between the wall and the grab bars shall be 1<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub> inches (38 mm). See Figure 11B-1C.*

**1115B.8.3 Structural strength.** *The structural strength of grab bars, tub and shower seats, fasteners, and mounting devices shall meet the following specifications:*

*1. Bending stress in a grab bar or seat induced by the maximum bending moment from the application of a 250-pound (1112 N) point load shall be less than the allowable stress for the material of the grab bar or seat.*

*2. Shear stress induced in a grab bar or seat by the application of a 250-pound (1112 N) point load shall be less than the allowable shear stress for the material of the grab bar or seat, and its mounting bracket or other support is considered to be fully restrained, then direct and torsional shear stresses shall not exceed the allowable shear stress.*

*3. Shear force induced in fastener or mounting device from the application of a 250-pound (1112 N) point load shall be less than the allowable lateral load of either the fastener or mounting device or the supporting structure, whichever is the smaller allowable load.*

*4. Tensile force induced in a fastener by a direct tension force of a 250-pound (1112 N) point load, plus the maximum moment from the application of a 250-pound (1112 N) point load, shall be less than the allowable withdrawal load between the fastener and supporting structure.*

*5. Grab bars shall not rotate within their fittings.*

**1115B.8.4 Surface.** *A grab bar and any wall or other surface adjacent to it shall be free of any sharp or abrasive elements. Edges shall have a minimum radius of 1/8 inch (3.2 mm).*

### **1115B.9 Toilet Room Fixtures and Accessories.**

**1115B.9.1 Lavatory fixtures.** *The requirements of this subsection shall apply to lavatory fixtures, vanities and built-in lavatories.*

*1. A clear floor space 30 inches by 48 inches (762 mm by 1219 mm) complying with Section 1118B.4 shall be provided in front of a lavatory to allow a forward approach. Such clear floor space shall adjoin or overlap an accessible route and shall extend into knee and toe space underneath the lavatory.*

*2. Mirrors shall be mounted with the bottom edge no higher than 40 inches (1016 mm) from the floor.*

**1115B.9.2 Towel, sanitary napkins, waste receptacles.** *Where towel, sanitary napkins, waste receptacles, and other similar dispensing and disposal fixtures are provided, at least one of each type shall be located with all operable parts, including coin slots, within 40 inches (1016 mm) from the finished floor.*

**1115B.9.3 Toilet tissue dispensers.** *Toilet tissue dispensers shall be located on the wall within 12 inches (305 mm) of the front edge of the toilet seat. Dispensers that control delivery or that do not permit continuous paper flow shall not be used. See Figure 11B-1A.*

**1115B.9.4 Urinals.** *Where urinals are provided, at least one shall have a clear floor space 30 inches by 48 inches (762 mm by 1219 mm) in front of the urinal to allow forward approach. This clear space shall comply with Section 1118B.4.*

**1115B.9.5 Interior surfaces.** *In other than dwelling units, toilet room floors shall have a smooth, hard, nonabsorbent surface such as portland cement, concrete, ceramic tile or other approved material which extends upward onto the walls at least 5 inches (127 mm). Walls within water closet compartments and walls within 24 inches (610 mm) of the front and sides of urinals shall be similarly finished to a height of 48 inches (1219 mm) and, except for structural elements, the materials used in such walls shall be a type which is not adversely affected by moisture.*

**1115B.9.6 Shower areas.** *Showers in all occupancies shall be finished as specified in Section 1115B.9.5 to a height of not less than 70 inches (1778 mm) above the drain inlet. Materials other than structural elements used in such walls shall be of a type which is not adversely affected by moisture.*

**1115B.9.7 Doors and panels.** *Doors and panels of shower and bathtub enclosures shall be substantially constructed from approved, shatter-resistant materials. Hinged shower doors shall open outward.*

**1115B.9.8 Glazing for shower and bathtub enclosures.** *Glazing used in doors and panels of shower and bathtub enclosures shall be fully tempered, laminated safety glass or approved plastic. When glass is used, it shall have minimum thickness of not less than  $\frac{1}{8}$  inch (3.2 mm) when fully tempered, or  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch (6.4 mm) when laminated, and shall pass the test requirements of UBC Standard 24-2.*

**1115B.9.9 Plastics.** *Plastics used in doors and panels of showers and bathtub enclosures shall be of a shatter-resistant type.*

**TABLE 1115B-1—SUGGESTED MOUNTING HEIGHTS**

The Division of the State Architect, Office of Regulation Services recommends the following dimensions as adequately serving the needs of children in projects under our jurisdiction. These recommendations are based on the federal "Recommendations for Accessibility for Children in Elementary School" and other recognized publications on access for children: A = Adult Dimensions (age 12 and over) E = Elementary Dimensions K = Kindergarten and Pre-school Dimensions			
DIMENSION	SUGGESTED		
	A (Inches)	E (Inches)	K (Inches)
Toilet centering from wall	18	15*	12*
Toilet seat height/Dimensions to top of seat	17-19	15	10-12
Grab bar height (side)	33	27*	20-22
Toilet paper in front of toilet	12 max.	6 max. *	6 max. *
Napkin disposal in front of toilet	12 max.	12 max.	N/A
Dispenser or mirror height	40 max.	36 max	32 max.
Lavatory/sink top height	34 max.	29 max.	24 max.
Lavatory/sink knee clearance	29 max.	24 max	19 max.
Urinal lip height	17 max.	15 max.	13 min.
Urinal flush handle height	44 max.	37 max.	32 max.
Drinking fountain bubbler height	36 max.	32 max.	30 max.
Drinking fountain knee clearance	27 min.	24 min.	22 min.
Ramp/stair handrail height	34-38	27	22



*\*Deviates from code requirements and requires a written finding of unreasonable hardship.*

## **SECTION 1116B — ELEVATORS AND SPECIAL ACCESS (WHEELCHAIR) LIFTS**

**1116B.1 [For DSA/AC] Elevators.** *Elevators shall be accessible. Elevators required to be accessible shall be designed and constructed to comply with Chapter 30.*

**1116B.2 [For DSA/AC] Special Access (Wheelchair) Lifts.** *Special access wheelchair lifts may be provided between levels in lieu of passenger elevators when the vertical distance between landings, as well as the structural design and safeguards are as allowed by the State of California, Division of the State Architect, Access Compliance, the Department of Industrial Relations, Division of Occupational Safety and Health and any applicable safety regulations of other administrative authorities having jurisdiction.*

*If lifts are provided, they shall be designed and constructed to facilitate unassisted entry, operation and exit from the lift and shall comply with the restrictions and enhancements of this section in conjunction with Sections 3093 to 3094, Part 7 of the California Code of Regulations.*

*Additionally, lifts may be provided as part of an accessible route only for the following conditions:*

**1116B.2.1** *To provide an accessible route to a performing area in an assembly occupancy, or to a speaking area or similar place (such as a dais for “head table”) in an assembly or Group B Occupancy.*

**1116B.2.2** *To comply with the wheelchair viewing position line-of-sight and dispersion requirements of Chapter 11B.*

**1116B.2.3** *To provide access to incidental occupiable spaces and rooms which are not open to the general public and which house no more than five persons, including, but not limited to, equipment control rooms and projection booths.*

**1116B.2.4** *To provide access where existing site constraints or other constraints make use of a ramp or an elevator infeasible.*

**EXCEPTIONS:** *1. The provisions of this section shall not apply to existing buildings when physical constraints will not allow compliance with these regulations or equivalent facilitation without creating an unreasonable hardship.*

**NOTE:** *See Section 101.17.*

*2. When the enforcing agency determines that compliance with any regulation under this section would create an unreasonable hardship, an exception to such regulation shall be granted when equivalent facilitation is provided.*

*3. The installation of lifts as part of an accessible route for additions or alterations is not limited to the four conditions required by Section 1116B.*

**1116B.2.4.1 Landing size.** *In new construction, the minimum size of landings specified in this section shall be 60 inches by 60 inches (1524 mm by 1524 mm). Other dimensions may be substituted where it can be demonstrated that a person using a wheelchair measuring 30 inches by 48 inches (762 mm by 1219 mm) can enter and operate the lift safely.*

**1116B.2.4.2 Relationship to the path of travel.** *Level and clear floor areas or landings as specified in this section shall be part of “path of travel” requirements. See Section 217.*

## **Section 1117B — OTHER BUILDING COMPONENTS**

### **1117B.1 Water Fountains (Drinking).**

**1117B.1.1 General.** *Where water fountains are provided, they shall comply with this section.*

*In new construction, where only one drinking fountain area is provided on a floor, there shall be a drinking fountain that is accessible to individuals who use wheelchairs in accordance with Plumbing Code Section 1507.0 and one accessible to those who have difficulty bending or stooping. This can be accommodated by the use of “hi-low” fountains, or by such other means as would achieve the required accessibility for each group on each floor.*

**1117B.1.2 Alcoves.** *Water fountains shall be located completely within alcoves or otherwise positioned so as not to encroach into pedestrian ways. The alcove in which the water fountain is located shall not be less than 32 inches (813 mm) in width and 18 inches (457 mm) in depth. See Figure 11B–3 of this code and Section 1507.0 of the California Plumbing Code.*

**EXCEPTION:** *When the enforcing agency determines that it would create an unreasonable hardship to locate the water fountain in an alcove, the water fountain may project into the path of travel, and the path of travel shall be identifiable to the blind as follows:*

- 1. The surface of the path of travel at the water fountain shall be textured so that it is clearly identifiable by a blind person using a cane. The minimum textured area shall extend from the wall supporting the water fountain to 1 foot (305 mm) beyond the front edge of the water fountain and shall extend 1 foot (305 mm) beyond each side of the water fountain, or*
- 2. Wing walls shall be provided on each side of the water fountain. The wing walls shall project out from the supporting wall at least as far as the water fountain to within 6 inches (152 mm) of the surface of the path of travel. There shall also be a minimum of 32 inches (813 mm) clear between the wing walls.*

### **1117B.2 Telephones.**

**1117B.2.1 General.** *If public telephones are provided, they shall comply with this section to the extent required by the following table. See Figure 11B–4.*

<i>Number of each type of telephone provided on each floor</i>	<i>Minimum number of telephones required to comply with Section 1117B.2<sup>1</sup></i>
<i>1 or more single units</i>	<i>1 or at least 50 percent of telephone unit(s) per floor</i>
<i>1 telephone bank</i>	<i>1 or at least 50 percent of telephone unit(s) per bank</i>
<i>2 or more banks</i>	<i>1 or at least 50 percent of telephone unit(s) per bank at least 1 telephone per floor shall meet the requirements for a forward reach telephone</i>

<sup>1</sup>*Additional public telephones may be installed at any height.*

**1117B.2.2 Clear floor ground space.** *A clear floor or ground space at least 30 inches by 48 inches (762 mm by 1219 mm) that allows either a forward or parallel approach by a person using a wheelchair shall be provided at telephones.*

**1117B.2.3 Size and approach.** *The minimum clear floor ground space required to accommodate a single, stationary wheelchair and occupant is 30 inches by 48 inches (762 mm by 1219 mm). The minimum clear floor or ground space for wheelchairs may be positioned for forward or parallel approach to an object. Clear floor or ground space for wheelchairs may be part of the knee space required under some objects. See Figure 11B–5A.*

**1117B.2.4 Relationship of maneuvering clearances to wheelchair spaces.** *One full unobstructed side of the clear floor or ground space for a wheelchair shall adjoin another wheelchair clear floor space. If a clear floor space is located in an alcove or otherwise confined on all or part of three sides, additional maneuvering clearances shall be provided. See Figure 11B–5A.*

**1117B.2.5 Floor surfaces of wheelchair spaces.** *Floor surfaces of wheelchair spaces shall conform to Section 1124B. Bases, enclosures and fixed seats shall not impede approaches to telephones by people who use wheelchairs.*

**1117B.2.6 Mounting height.** *The highest operable part of the telephone shall be within the reach ranges specified in Sections 1118B.5 and 1118B.6. Telephones mounted diagonally in a corner that require wheelchair users to reach diagonally shall have the highest operable part no higher than 54 inches (1372 mm) above the floor. See Figure 11B–4.*

**1117B.2.7 Enclosures.** *If telephone enclosures are provided, they may overhang the clear floor space required in Sections 1117B.2.2, 1117B.2.3 and 1117B.2.4 within the following limits:*

*1. **Side reach possible.** The overhang shall be no greater than 19 inches (483 mm). The height of the lowest overhanging part shall be equal to or greater than 27 inches (686 mm). See Figure 11B-4 (a).*

*2. **Full-height enclosures.** Entrances to full-height enclosures shall be 30 inches (762 mm) minimum. See Figure 11B-4 (b).*

*3. **Forward reach required.** If the overhang is greater than 12 inches (305 mm), then the clear width of the enclosure shall be 30 inches (762 mm) minimum; if the clear width of the enclosure is less than 30 inches (762 mm), then the height of the lowest overhanging part shall be equal to or greater than 27 inches (686 mm). See Figure 11B-4 (c).*

*4. **Protruding telephone enclosures.** Where telephone enclosures protrude into walls, halls, corridors or aisles, they shall also comply with Section 1121B.*

**1117B.2.8 Telephone equipment for hearing impaired persons.** *Telephones shall be equipped with a receiver that generates a magnetic field in the area of the receiver cap. If banks of public telephones are provided, at least one in each bank and a total of at least 25 percent of the total number of public telephones, including closed-circuit telephones in a building or facility, shall be equipped with a volume control. Such telephones shall be capable of a minimum of 12 dBA and a maximum of 18 dBA above normal. If an automatic reset is provided, 18 dBA may be exceeded. Public telephones with volume control shall be hearing aid compatible and shall be identified by a sign containing a depiction of a telephone handset with radiating sound waves.*

**1117B.2.9 Text telephones.**

**1117B.2.9.1 Where required.** *If a total of four or more public pay telephones are provided at the interior and exterior of a site, and if at least one of the total is in an interior location, then at least one interior public text telephone shall be provided.*

***EXCEPTIONS:** 1. If an interior public pay telephone is provided in a stadium or arena, in a convention center, in a hotel with a convention center, or in a covered mall, at least one interior public text telephone shall be provided in the facility.*

*2. If a public pay telephone is located in or adjacent to a hospital emergency room, hospital recovery room or hospital waiting room, one public text telephone shall be provided at each location*

**1117B.2.9.2 General.** *Text telephones shall comply with the following requirements:*

*1. Text telephones used with a pay telephone shall be permanently affixed within or adjacent to the telephone enclosure. If an acoustic coupler is used, the telephone cord shall be sufficiently long to allow connection of the text telephone and the telephone receiver.*

*2. Pay telephones designed to accommodate a portable text telephone shall be equipped with a shelf and an electrical outlet within or adjacent to the telephone enclosure. The telephone handset shall be capable of being placed flush on the surface of the shelf. The shelf shall be capable of accommodating a text telephone and shall have 6 inches (152 mm) minimum vertical clearance in the area where the text telephone is to be placed.*

*3. Equivalent facilitation may be substituted for the requirements of this section. For example, a portable text telephone may be made available in a hotel at a registration desk if it is available on a 24-hour basis for use with nearby public pay phones. In this instance, at least one pay phone shall comply with Item 2. In addition, if an acoustic coupler is used, the telephone handset cord shall be sufficiently long to allow connection of the text telephone and the telephone receiver. Directional signage shall comply with Section 1117B.5.*

**1117B.2.9.3 Signage.** *Text telephones shall be identified by the International TDD symbol (see Figure 11B-14). If a facility has a public text telephone, directional signage indicating the location of the nearest such telephone shall be placed adjacent to all banks of telephones that do not contain a text telephone. Such directional signage shall include the International TDD symbol. If a facility has no banks of telephones, the directional signage shall be provided at the entrance or in a building directory.*

**1117B.2.10 Controls.** *Telephones shall have push-button controls where service for such equipment is available.*

**1117B.2.11 Cord length.** *The cord from the telephone to the handset shall be at least 29 inches (737 mm) long.*

**1117B.2.12 Telephone books.** *If telephone books are provided, they shall be located in a position that complies with the reach ranges in Sections 1118B.5 and 1118B.6.*

**1117B.3 Kitchens.** *See Section 1112A.*

**1117B.4 Swimming Pools.** *See Section 1104B.4.3.*

**1117B.5 Signs and Identification.**

### **1117B.5.1 International Symbol of Accessibility.**

**1117B.5.1.1 Design.** *The International Symbol of Accessibility shall be the standard used to identify facilities that are accessible to and usable by physically disabled persons as set forth in these building standards and as specifically required in this section. See Figure 11B–6.*

**EXCEPTION:** *Signs need not be provided for facilities within an adaptable dwelling unit, or within an accessible patient or guest room.*

**1117B.5.1.2 Color of symbol.** *The symbol specified above shall consist of a white figure on a blue background. The blue shall be equal to Color No. 15090 in Federal Standard 595B.*

**EXCEPTION:** *The appropriate enforcement agency may approve special signs and identification necessary to complement decor or unique design when it is determined that such signs and identification provide adequate direction to persons with disabilities.*

**1117B.5.2 Braille symbols.** *Contracted Grade 2 Braille shall be used wherever Braille symbols are specifically required in other portions of these standards. Dots shall be  $\frac{1}{10}$  inch (2.54 mm) on centers in each cell with  $\frac{2}{10}$  inch (5.08 mm) space between cells. Dots shall be raised a minimum of  $\frac{1}{40}$  inch (0.635 mm) above the background.*

**1117B.5.3 Proportions.** *Letters and numbers on signs shall have a width-to-height ratio of between 3:5 and 1:1 and a stroke width to height ratio between 1:5 and 1:10.*

**1117B.5.4 Character height.** *Characters and numbers on signs shall be sized according to the viewing distance from which they are to be read. The minimum height is measured using an uppercase X. Lowercase characters are permitted. For signs suspended or projected above the finish floor in compliance with Section 1121B, the minimum character height shall be 3 inches (76 mm).*

**1117B.5.5 Contrast of symbol.** *Characters and symbols shall contrast with their background, either light characters on a dark background or dark characters on a light background.*

**1117B.5.6 Raised characters and pictorial symbol signs.** *When raised characters or symbols are used, they shall conform to the following requirements:*

**1. Letter type.** *Letters and numbers on signs shall be raised  $\frac{1}{32}$  inch (0.794 mm) minimum and shall be sans-serif uppercase characters accompanied by Grade 2 Braille.*

**2. Symbol size.** *Raised characters or symbols shall be a minimum of  $\frac{5}{8}$  inch (15.9 mm) high.*

**3. Pictorial symbol signs (pictograms).** *Pictorial symbol signs (pictograms) shall be accompanied by the equivalent verbal description placed directly below the pictogram. The border dimension of the pictogram shall be a minimum of 6 inches (152 mm) in height.*

**1117B.5.7 Entrance signs.** *All building entrances that are accessible to and usable by persons with disabilities shall be identified with at least one standard sign and with additional directional signs, as required, to be visible to persons along approaching pedestrian ways.*

**1117B.5.8 Information posted.** *Buildings that have been remodeled to provide specific sanitary facilities and/or elevators for public use that conform to these building standards shall have this information posted in the building lobby, preferably as part of the building directory.*

**1117B.5.9 Mounting location and height.** *Where permanent identification is provided for rooms and spaces, raised letters shall be provided and shall be accompanied by Braille in conformance with Section 1117B.5.6. Signs shall be installed on the wall adjacent to the latch outside of the door. Where there is no wall space on the latch side, including at double leaf doors, signs shall be placed on the nearest adjacent wall, preferably on the right. Mounting height shall be 60 inches (1524 mm) above the finish floor to the centerline of the sign. Mounting location shall be determined so that a person may approach within 3 inches (76 mm) of signage without encountering protruding objects or standing within the swing of a door.*

**NOTE:** *See also Section 1115B.5 for additional signage requirements applicable to sanitary facilities.*

**1117B.5.10 Traffic-control devices.** *Pole-supported pedestrian traffic-control buttons shall be identified with color coding consisting of a textured horizontal yellow band 2 inches (51 mm) in width encircling the pole, and a 1-inch-wide (25 mm) dark border band above and below this yellow band. Color-coding should be placed immediately above the control button. Control buttons shall be located no higher than 48 inches (1219 mm) above the surface adjacent to the pole.*

**1117B.6 Controls and Operating Mechanisms.** *See also Sections 210-7(g), 380-8(c) and 760-9, California Electrical Code, for electrical installation.*

**1.General.** *Controls and operating mechanisms required to be accessible by Section 101.17.11 shall comply with the requirements of this section.*

**2. Clear floor space.** *Clear floor space complying with Section 1118B.4 that allows a forward or parallel approach by a person using a wheelchair shall be provided at controls, dispensers, receptacles and other operable equipment.*

**3.Height.** *The highest operable part of all controls, dispensers, receptacles and other operable equipment shall be placed within at least one of the reach ranges specified in Sections 1118B.5 and 1118B.6. Electrical and communication system receptacles on walls shall be mounted no less than 15 inches (381 mm) above the floor.*

**EXCEPTION:** *These requirements do not apply where the use of special equipment dictates otherwise or where electrical and communications systems receptacles are not normally intended for use by building occupants.*

**4.Operation.** *Controls and operating mechanisms shall be operable with one hand and shall not require tight grasping, pinching or twisting of the wrist. The force required to activate controls shall be no greater than 5 pounds (22.2 N) of force.*

### **1117B.7 Automated Teller Machines and Point of Sale Machines.**

#### **1117B.7.1 Definitions.**

**1.AUTOMATED TELLER MACHINE (ATM)** *means any electronic information processing device, including a point-of-sale machine, used by a financial institution or other business entity and its customers for the primary purpose of executing financial transactions between itself and its customers. For the purposes of this section, automated teller machine includes point-of-sale machines used in grocery stores, ticket sales facilities, and other business entities, but does not include card-reading-devices located on fuel pump islands at gasoline service stations and motor-vehicle fuel facilities.*

**2.ATM SITE** *means that immediate area which is within or made or to be made part of an existing building or a building to be constructed, and to which one or more ATMs is or shall be affixed.*

**3.ATM INSTALLATION** *means a single ATM structurally affixed to a building or other structure.*

**1117B.7.2 General.** *Where ATMs are provided for the public, they shall comply with this section.*

**EXCEPTIONS:** *1.In grocery stores and other retail outlets with point-of-sale machines located at individual checkstands, machines that are located at accessible checkstands must be made accessible. Where machines are located away from individual checkstands, they must all be made accessible.*

*2. Where the enforcing agency determines that compliance with this regulation would create an unreasonable hardship, an exception may be granted when equivalent facilitation is provided through the use of other methods or materials.*

*3. In existing buildings, these regulations shall not apply when legal or physical constraints would not allow compliance with these regulations or equivalent facilitation without creating an unreasonable hardship. See Section 101.17.11, Item 4.*



4. *Drive-up-only automated teller machines are not required to comply with this section.*
5. *Card reading devices located on fuel pump islands at gasoline service stations and motor-vehicle fuel facilities are not required to comply with Sections 1114B through 1126B and all subsections thereunder.*

**1117B.7.3 Controls.** *Controls for user activation shall comply with the requirements of Section 1117B.6, Item 4, which states that controls and operating mechanisms shall be operable with one hand and shall not require tight grasping, pinching or twisting of the wrist. The force required to activate controls shall be no greater than 5 pounds (22.2 N) of force.*

**1117B.7.4 Clearances and reach range.** *Free-standing or built-in units not having a clear space under them shall comply with the following as to clearance and reach range.*

**1117B.7.4.1 Where one ATM is provided.** *Where one ATM is provided at a location, it shall meet the specifications of Section 4.34 of the Americans with Disabilities Act Accessibility Guidelines (ADAAG) as follows:*

*1. The ATM shall be located so that clear floor space complying with Section 1118B.4 is provided to allow a person using a wheelchair to make a forward approach, a parallel approach, or both, to the machine.*

*2. **Forward approach only.** If only a forward approach is possible, operable parts of all controls shall be placed within the forward reach range specified in Section 1118B.5.*

*3. **Parallel approach only.** If only a parallel approach is possible, operable parts of controls shall be placed as follows:*

*3.1 **Reach depth not more than 10 inches (254 mm).** Where the reach depth to the operable parts of all controls as measured from the vertical plane perpendicular to the edge of the unobstructed clear floor space at the farthest protrusion of the automated teller machine or surround is not more than 10 inches (254 mm), the maximum height from the floor shall be 54 inches (1372 mm).*

*3.2 **Reach depth more than 10 inches (254 mm).** Where the reach depth to the operable parts of any control as measured from the vertical plane perpendicular to the edge of the unobstructed clear floor space at the farthest protrusion of the ATM or surround is more than 10 inches (254 mm), the maximum height from the floor shall be as shown in Table 11B-5.*

TABLE 11B-5—MAXIMUM REACH DEPTH FOR AUTOMATED TELLER MACHINES

REACH DEPTH (X) (Inches)	MAXIMUM HEIGHT (Y) (Inches)
25.4 for mm	
10	54
11	53.5
12	53
13	52.5
14	51.5
15	51
16	50.5
17	50
18	49.5
19	49
20	48.5
21	47.5
22	47
23	46.5
24	46

*Note: See Figure 11B-5D (d).*

**4. Forward and parallel approach.** *If both a forward and parallel approach are possible, operable parts of controls shall be placed within at least one of the reach ranges in Item 2 or 3*

**5.Bins.** *Where bins are provided for envelopes, waste paper, or other purposes, at least one of each type provided shall comply with the applicable reach ranges in Item 2, 3 or 4.*

**EXCEPTION:** *Where a function can be performed in a substantially equivalent manner by using an alternate control, only one of the controls needed to perform that function is required to comply with this section. If the controls are identified by tactile markings, such markings shall be provided on both controls.*

**1117B.7.4.2 Where two ATMs are provided.** *Where two ATMs are provided at a location, one shall comply with Section 1117B.7.4.1, except that the highest operable part shall be 48 inches (1219 mm) maximum. The second ATM is not regulated as to height, including height of display.*

**1117B.7.4.3 Where three or more ATMs are provided.** Where three or more ATMs are provided, two shall be used to satisfy Section 1117B.7.4.2, above. For the additional ATMs beyond the first two, at least 50 percent shall comply with Section 1117B.7.4.1. The remainder are not regulated as to height, including height of display. If features provided differ from ATM to ATM, all features shall be equally represented among the accessible ATMs.

**1117B.7.5 Display.** LED, cathode ray, or other screen devices intended to be viewed by the user shall be positioned so they are readily visible to and usable by a person sitting in a wheelchair with approximate eye level of 45 inches (1143 mm), and shall comply with the following requirements:

**NOTE:** Automated teller machines allowed to be unregulated as to height in Sections 1117B.7.4 through 1117B.7.4.3 above are also exempt from this section.

**1. Vertically mounted screen devices.** If mounted vertically or tipped no more than 30 degrees away from the viewer, the center line of screens and other screen devices shall be located a maximum of 52 inches (1321 mm) above grade.

**2. Angle-mounted screen devices.** If mounted at an angle between 30 degrees and 60 degrees tipped away from the viewer, the center line of screens and other screen devices shall be located a maximum of 44 inches (1118 mm) above grade.

**3. Horizontally mounted screen devices.** If mounted at an angle between 60 degrees and 90 degrees tipped away from the viewer, the center line of screens and other screen devices shall be located a maximum of 34 inches (864 mm) above grade.

**1117B.7.6 ATM equipment for persons with vision impairments.** Instructions and all information for use shall be made accessible to and independently usable by persons with vision impairments.

## **Section 1118B — SPACE ALLOWANCE AND REACH RANGES**

**1118B.1 Wheelchair Passage Width.** The minimum clear width for single wheelchair passage shall be 32 inches (813 mm) at a point and 36 inches (914 mm) continuously. See Figure 11B-12.

**1118B.2 Width for Wheelchair Passing.** The minimum width for two wheelchairs to pass is 60 inches (1524 mm). See Figure 11B-12.

**1118B.3 Wheelchair Turning Space.** The space required for a wheelchair to make a 180 degree turn is a clear space of 60 inches (1524 mm) diameter [see Figure 11B-12 (a)] or a T-shaped space. See Figure 11B-12 (b).

#### **1118B.4 Clear Floor or Ground Space for Wheelchairs.**

*1. Size and approach.* The minimum clear floor or ground space required to accommodate a single, stationary wheelchair and occupant is 30 inches by 48 inches (762 mm by 1219 mm). The minimum clear floor or ground space for wheelchairs may be positioned for forward or parallel approach to an object. Clear floor or ground space for wheelchairs may be part of the knee space required under some objects. See Figure 11B-5A

*2.Relationship of maneuvering clearances to wheelchair spaces.* One full unobstructed side of the clear floor or ground space for a wheelchair shall adjoin or overlap an accessible route or adjoin another wheelchair clear floor space. If a clear floor space is located in an alcove or otherwise confined on all or a part of three sides, additional maneuvering clearances shall be provided as shown in Figure 11B-5A (b). See Figure 11B-5A.

**1118B.5Forward Reach.** If the clear floor space allows only forward approach to an object, the maximum high forward reach allowed shall be 48 inches (1219 mm) [see Figure 11B-5C (b)]. The minimum low forward reach is 15 inches (381 mm). If the high forward reach is over an obstruction, reach and clearances shall be as shown in Figure 11B-5C (a).

**1118B.6Side reach.** If the clear floor space allows parallel approach by a person in a wheelchair, the maximum high side reach allowed shall be 54 inches (1372 mm) and the low side reach shall be no less than 9 inches (229 mm) above the floor [see Figure 11B-5D (a) and (b)]. If the side reach is over an obstruction, the reach and clearances shall be as shown in Figure 11B-5D (c). See Figure 11B-5D.

### **Section 1119B — SPECIAL STANDARDS OF ACCESSIBILITY FOR BUILDINGS WITH HISTORICAL SIGNIFICANCE**

See Section 1135B.

### **Section 1120B — FLOORS AND LEVELS**

**1120B.1 Floors Within Each Story.** In buildings and facilities, floors of a given story shall be a common level throughout, or shall be connected by pedestrian ramps, passenger elevators or special access lifts.

**EXCEPTIONS:** 1. In existing buildings, other than dining banquet and bar facilities, when the enforcing agency determines that compliance with this section would create an unreasonable hardship, an exception shall be granted when equivalent facilitation is provided.

2. In existing dining, banquet and bar facilities, when the enforcing agency determines that compliance with this section would create an unreasonable hardship, an exception shall be granted provided that a minimum of 75 percent of the dining, banquet and bar area shall be a common level throughout or shall be connected by pedestrian ramps, passenger elevators or special lifts. See Section 101.17.11, Item 1.4, for new buildings only.

3. In existing buildings, this section shall not apply when legal or physical constraints would not allow compliance with this section or equivalent facilitation without creating an unreasonable hardship. See Section 101.17.11, Item 4.

4. Where specifically exempted in other portions of this code.

**1120B.2 Floor Surface.** The surface of floors shall be slip-resistant and shall comply with Section 1124B.

## **Section 1121B — PROTRUDING OBJECTS**

**1121B.1 General.** Objects projecting from walls (for example, telephones) with their leading edges between 27 inches (686 mm) and 80 inches (2032 mm) above the finished floor shall protrude no more than 4 inches (102 mm) into walks, halls, corridors, passageways or aisles. Objects mounted with their leading edges at or below 27 inches (686 mm) above the finished floor may protrude any amount. Free-standing objects mounted on posts or pylons may overhang 12 inches (305 mm) maximum from 27 inches (686 mm) to 80 inches (2032 mm) above the ground or finished floor. Protruding objects shall not reduce the clear width of an accessible route or maneuvering space. See Figure 11B-7A.

**1121B.2 Head Room.** Walks, halls, corridors, passageways, aisles or other circulation spaces shall have 80 inches (2032 mm) minimum clear head room. See Figure 11B-7A.

## **Section 1122B — FIXED OR BUILT-IN SEATING, TABLES, AND COUNTERS**

**1122B.1 Minimum Number.** Where fixed or built-in seating, tables, or counters are provided for the public, and in general employee areas, 5 percent, but never less than one, must be accessible as provided in this section.

**1122B.2 Seating.** If seating spaces for persons in wheelchairs are provided at fixed tables or counters, clear floor space complying with Section 1118B.4 shall be provided. Such clear floor space shall not overlap knee space by more than 19 inches (483 mm) (see Figure 11B-13).

**1122B.3 Knee Clearance.** If seating for persons in wheelchairs is provided at fixed tables or counters, knee spaces at least 27 inches (686 mm) high, 30 inches (762 mm) wide and 19 inches (483 mm) deep shall be provided (see Figure 11B-13).

**EXCEPTION:** Knee clearance is not required at checkout counters or service counters.

**1122B.4 Height of Work Surfaces.** *The tops of tables and counters shall be 28 inches to 34 inches (711 mm to 864 mm) from the floor or ground.*

*Where a single counter contains more than one transaction station, such as (but not limited to) a bank counter with multiple teller windows or a retail sales counter with multiple cash register stations, at least 5 percent, but never less than one, of each type of station shall be located at a section of counter that is at least 36 inches (914 mm) long and no more than 28 to 34 inches (711 to 864 mm) high.*

## **Section 1123B — ACCESS TO EMPLOYEE AREAS**

**1123B.1 General.** *Employee areas shall conform to all requirements of Division of the State Architect/Access Compliance in the California Building Code, Plumbing Code and Electrical Code.*

**1123B.2 Work Stations.** *Specific work stations need only comply with aisle width (Sections 1133B.6.1 and 1133B.6.2) and floors and levels (Section 1120B), and entry ways shall be 32 inches (813 mm) in clear width.*

**EXCEPTION:** *Accessibility is not required to (1) observation galleries used primarily for security purposes; or (2) in nonoccupiable spaces accessed only by ladders, catwalks, crawl spaces, very narrow passageways, or freight (nonpassenger) elevators, and frequented only by service personnel for repair purposes; such spaces include, but are not limited to, elevator pits, elevator penthouses, mechanical rooms, piping or equipment catwalks.*

## **Section 1124B — GROUND AND FLOOR SURFACES**

**1124B.1 General.** *Ground and floor surfaces along accessible routes and in accessible rooms and spaces, including floors, walks, ramps, stairs and curb ramps, shall be stable, firm, slip-resistant, and shall comply with this section.*

**1124B.2 Changes in Level.** *Changes in level up to  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch (6 mm) vertical and without edge treatment [see Figure 11B-5E (c) and (d)]. Changes in level between  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch (6 mm) and  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm) shall be accomplished by means of a ramp that complies with Figure 11B-5E (d).*

**1124B.3 Carpet.** *If carpet or carpet tile is used on a ground or floor surface, then it shall be securely attached; have a firm cushion, pad or backing or no cushion or pad; and have a level loop, textured loop; level-cut pile, or level-cut/uncut pile texture. The maximum pile height shall be  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm). Exposed edges of carpet shall be fastened to floor surfaces and have trim along the entire length of the exposed edge. Carpet edge trim shall comply with Section 1124B.2.*

**1124B.4 Gratings.** *If gratings are located in walking surfaces, then they shall have spaces no greater than  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm) wide in one direction (see Figure 11B–7B). If gratings have elongated openings, then they shall be placed so that the long dimension is perpendicular to the dominant direction of travel (see Figure 11B–7B).*

## **Section 1125B — STORAGE**

**1125B.1 General.** *If fixed storage facilities such as cabinets, shelves, closets or drawers are provided where access is required by Section 101.17.11, at least one of each type shall comply with this section. Additional storage may be provided outside of the reach ranges shown in Figure 11B–5D.*

**1125B.2 Clear Floor Space.** *A clear floor space at least 30 inches by 48 inches (762 mm by 1219 mm) complying with Section 1118B.4 that allows either a forward or parallel approach by a person using a wheelchair shall be provided at accessible storage facilities.*

**1125B.3 Height.** *Accessible storage spaces shall be within at least one of the reach ranges specified in Sections 1118B.5 and 1118B.6. Clothes rods shall be a maximum of 54 inches (1372 mm) from the floor for a side approach (See Figure 11B–5D). Where the distance from the wheelchair to the clothes rod or shelf exceeds 10 inches (254 mm), as in closets without accessible doors, the height and depth to the rod or shelf shall comply with Figure 11B–5D.*

**1125B.4 Hardware.** *Hardware for accessible storage facilities shall comply with Section 1117B.6. Touch latches and U-shaped pulls are acceptable.*

## **Section 1126B — VENDING MACHINES**

*Install vending machines in compliance with Section 1117B.6, “Controls and Operating Mechanisms.”*

## **Division II – SITE ACCESSIBILITY**

### **SECTION 1127B — Exterior Routes of Travel**

**1127B.1 General.** *Site development and grading shall be designed to provide access to all entrances and exterior ground-floor exits, and access to normal paths of travel, and where necessary to provide access, shall incorporate pedestrian ramps, curb ramps, etc. When more than one building or facility is located on a site, accessible routes of travel shall be provided between buildings and accessible site facilities. The accessible route of travel shall be the most practical direct route between accessible building entrances, accessible site facilities and the accessible entrance to the site.*

**EXCEPTIONS:** 1. *Where the enforcing agency determines that compliance with these regulations would create an unreasonable hardship because of topography, natural barriers, etc., an exception may be granted when equivalent facilitation is provided through the use of other methods and materials.*

2. *In existing buildings, this section shall not apply in those conditions where, due to legal or physical constraints, the site of the project would not allow compliance with these regulations or equivalent facilitation without creating an unreasonable hardship.*

**NOTE:** See Section 101.17.11, Item 4.

**1127B.2 Design and Construction.** *When accessibility is required by this section, it shall be designed and constructed in accordance with this Building Code. See Section 1114B.1 for a list of applicable sections.*

**1127B. Signs.** *At every primary public entrance and at every major junction along or leading to an accessible route of travel, there shall be a sign displaying the international symbol of accessibility. Signs shall indicate the direction to accessible building entrances and facilities and shall comply with the requirements found in Sections 1117B.5 through 1117B.5.10.*

**1127B.4 Outside Stairways.** *Where stairways occur outside a building, refer to Sections 1006.17 of the 1995 California Building Code, 1120A.4.3 and 1133B.4.4.*

#### **1127B.5 Curb Ramps.**

1. **General.** *Curb ramps shall be constructed at each corner of street intersections and where a pedestrian way crosses a curb. The preferred and recommended location for curb ramps is in the center of the crosswalk of each street corner. Where it is necessary to locate a curb ramp in the center of the curb return and the street surfaces are marked to identify pedestrian crosswalks, the lower end of the curb ramp shall terminate within such crosswalk areas. See Figure 11B–20C, Case E.*

2. **Width of curb ramps.** *Curb ramps shall be a minimum of 4 feet (1219 mm) in width and shall lie, generally, in a single sloped plane, with a minimum of surface warping and cross slope.*



**3. Slope of curb ramps.** The slope of curb ramps shall not exceed 1 unit vertical to 12 units horizontal (8.33% slope). Transitions from ramps to walks, gutters, or streets shall be flush and free of abrupt changes, except that curb ramps shall comply with Item 5 below. Maximum slopes of adjoining gutters, road surface immediately adjacent to the curb ramp, or accessible route shall not exceed 1 unit vertical to 20 units horizontal (5% slope) within 4 feet (1219 mm) of the top and bottom of the curb ramp. The slope of the fanned or flared sides of curb ramps shall not exceed 1 unit vertical to 10 units horizontal (10% slope).

**4. Level landing.** A level landing 4 feet (1219 mm) deep shall be provided at the upper end of each curb ramp over its full width to permit safe egress from the ramp surface, or the slope of the fanned or flared sides of the curb ramp shall not exceed 1 unit vertical to 12 units horizontal (8.33% slope).

**5. Beveled lip.** The lower end of each curb ramp shall have a  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (13 mm) lip beveled at 45 degrees as a detectable way-finding edge for persons with visual impairment.

**6. Finish.** The surface of each curb ramp and its flared sides shall be stable, firm and slip-resistant and shall be of contrasting finish from that of the adjacent sidewalk.

**7. Border.** All curb ramps shall have a grooved border 12 inches (305 mm) wide at the level surface of the sidewalk along the top and each side approximately  $\frac{3}{4}$  inch (19 mm) on center. All curb ramps constructed between the face of the curb and the street shall have a grooved border at the level surface of the sidewalk. See Figures 11B-19A and 11B-19B.

**8. Detectable warnings.** A curb ramp shall have a detectable warning that extends the full width and depth of the curb ramp inside the grooved border when the ramp slope is less than 1 unit vertical to 15 units horizontal (6.7% slope). Detectable warnings shall consist of raised truncated domes with a diameter of nominal 0.9 inch (22.9 mm) at the base tapering to 0.45 inch (11.4 mm) at the top, a height of nominal 0.2 inch (5.1 mm) and a center-to-center spacing of nominal 2.35 inches (59.7 mm) in compliance with Figure 11B-23A. "Nominal" here shall be in accordance with Section 12-31-102, State Referenced Standards Code. The detectable warning shall contrast visually with adjoining surfaces, either light-on-dark or dark-on-light. The material used to provide contrast shall be an integral part of the walking surface. The domes may be constructed in a variety of methods, including cast in place or stamped, or may be part of a prefabricated surface treatment.

**9. Obstructions.** Curb ramps shall be located or protected to prevent their obstruction by parked cars.

**10. Diagonal curb ramps.** If diagonal (or corner-type) curb ramps have returned curbs or other well-defined edges, such edges shall be parallel to the direction of pedestrian flow. The bottom of diagonal curb ramps shall have 48 inches (1219 mm) minimum clear space as shown in Figure 11B-22 (c) and (d). If diagonal curb ramps are provided at marked crossings, the 48-inch (1219 mm) clear space shall be within the markings (see Figure 11B-20B, Cases C and D). If diagonal curb ramps have flared sides, they shall also have at least a 24-inch-long (610 mm) segment of straight curb located on each side of the curb ramp and within the marked crossing [see Figure 11B-22 (c)].

**NOTES:** 1. For additional curb details, see Figures 11B-19A and 11B-19B.

2. If distance from curb to back of sidewalk is too short to accommodate ramp and a 4-foot (1219 mm) platform as in Figure 11B-20A, Case A, the sidewalk may be depressed longitudinally as in Figure 11B-20A, Case B, or Figure 11B-20B, Case C, or may be widened as in Figure 11B-20B, Case D.

3. If sidewalk is less than 5 feet (1524 mm) wide, the full width of the sidewalk shall be depressed as shown in Figure 11B-20B, Case C.

4. As an alternate to Figure 11B-20A, Case A, one ramp may be placed in the center of the curb return as in Figure 11B-20C, Case E.

5. When ramp is located in center of curb return, crosswalk configuration must be similar to that shown on the plan to accommodate wheelchairs. (See Figure 11B-22.)

6. If planting area width is equal to or greater than ramp length, ramp side slope distance equals 3 feet (914 mm). (See Figure 11B-20D, Case G.)

7. For Figure 11B-20C, Case F and Figure 11B-20D, Case G, the longitudinal portion of the sidewalk may need to be depressed as shown in Figure 11B-20A, Case B.

8. If located on a curve, the sides of the ramp need not be parallel, but the minimum width of the ramp shall be 4 feet (1219 mm).

9. The ramp shall have a 12 inch-wide (305 mm) border with  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch (6 mm) grooves approximately  $\frac{3}{4}$  inch (19 mm) on center. See grooving detail, Figure 11B-20D, Case H.

## **SECTION 1128B — PEDESTRIAN GRADE SEPARATIONS (OVERPASSES AND UNDERPASSES)**

*Pedestrian ramps on pedestrian grade separations shall comply with the requirements of Section 1133B.5 for ramps.*

*Cross slopes of walking surfaces shall be the minimum possible and shall not exceed  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch (6 mm) per foot (2.083% gradient). The slope of any appreciably warped walking surface shall not exceed 1 unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (8.33% slope) in any direction. Where pedestrian grade separations cross streets or other vehicular traffic ways, and where a street level crossing can reasonably and safely be used by persons with physical disabilities, there shall be provided conforming curb ramps and a usable pathway.*

**EXCEPTIONS:** 1. When the grade differential of the walking surface of a pedestrian grade separation exceeds 14 feet (4267 mm) due to required height clearance and grade conditions, and the enforcing agency finds that because of right-of-way restrictions, topography or natural barriers, wheelchair accessibility or equivalent facilitation would create an unreasonable hardship, such accessibility need not be provided. However, the requirements in these regulations relating to other types of mobility shall be complied with.

*2. For existing facilities, this section shall not apply where, due to legal or physical constraints, the site of the project will not allow compliance with these regulations or equivalent facilitation without creating an unreasonable hardship.*

**NOTE:** See Section 101.17.11, Item 4.

## **Section 1129B — ACCESSIBLE PARKING REQUIRED**

**1129B.1 General.** *Each lot or parking structure where parking is provided for the public as clients, guests or employees, shall provide accessible parking as required by this section. Accessible parking spaces serving a particular building shall be located on the shortest accessible route of travel from adjacent parking to an accessible entrance. In parking facilities that do not serve a particular building, accessible parking shall be located on the shortest accessible route of travel to an accessible pedestrian entrance of the parking facility. In buildings with multiple accessible entrances with adjacent parking, accessible parking spaces shall be dispersed and located closest to the accessible entrances. Table 11B–6 establishes the number of accessible parking spaces required.*

**EXCEPTION:** *This subsection shall not apply to existing facilities where compliance with local ordinances precludes satisfying the above requirements or of providing equivalent facilitation unless a change of occupancy occurs.*

**1129B.2 Less Than Five Spaces.** *When less than five parking spaces are provided at buildings and facilities subject to these regulations, one shall be 14 feet (4267 mm) wide and lined to provide a 9-foot (2743 mm) parking area and a 5-foot (1524 mm) loading and unloading area. However, there is no requirement that the space be reserved exclusively or identified for use by persons with disabilities only.*

**1129B.3 Medical Care Outpatient Facilities.** *At facilities providing medical care and other services for persons with mobility impairments, parking spaces complying with this section shall be provided in accordance with Table 11B–6 except as follows:*

**1. Outpatient units and facilities.** *Ten percent of the total number of parking spaces provided serve each such outpatient unit or facility.*

**2. Units and facilities that specialize in treatment or services for persons with mobility impairments.** *Twenty percent of the total number of parking spaces provided serve each such unit or facility.*

**TABLE 11B-6 — SPACES REQUIRED**  
*Establishes the number of accessible parking spaces required.*

<b>TOTAL NUMBER OF PARKING SPACES IN LOT OR GARAGE</b>	<b>MINIMUM REQUIRED NUMBER OF SPACES</b>
1–25	1
26–50	2
51–75	3
76–100	4
101–150	5
151–200	6
201–300	7
301–400	8
401–500	9
501–1,000	*
1,001 and over	**

\*Two percent of total.

\*\*Twenty plus one for each 100, or fraction thereof over 1,001.

**1129B.4 Parking Space Size.** Accessible parking spaces shall be located as near as practical to a primary entrance and shall be sized as follows:

**1. Dimensions.** Where single spaces are provided, they shall be 14 feet (4267 mm) wide and outlined to provide a 9-foot (2743 mm) parking area and a 5-foot (1524 mm) loading and unloading access aisle on the passenger side of the vehicle. When more than one space is provided in lieu of providing a 14-foot-wide (4267 mm) space for each parking space, two spaces can be provided within a 23-foot-wide (7010 mm) area lined to provide a 9-foot (2743 mm) parking area on each side of a 5-foot (1524 mm) loading and unloading access aisle in the center. The minimum length of each parking space shall be 18 feet (5486 mm). See Figure 11B-18A.

**2. Van space(s).** One in every eight accessible spaces, but not less than one, shall be served by an access aisle 96 inches (2438 mm) wide minimum and shall be designated van accessible as required by Section 1129B.5. All such spaces may be grouped on one level of a parking structure.

**3. Arrangement of parking space.** *In each parking area, a bumper or curb shall be provided and located to prevent encroachment of cars over the required width of walkways. Also, the space shall be so located that persons with disabilities are not compelled to wheel or walk behind parked cars other than their own. Pedestrian ways which are accessible to persons with disabilities shall be provided from each such parking space to related facilities, including curb cuts or ramps as needed. Ramps shall not encroach into any parking space.*

**EXCEPTIONS:** *1. Ramps located at the front of accessible parking spaces may encroach into the length of such spaces when such encroachment does not limit the capability of a person with a disability to leave or enter a vehicle, thus providing equivalent facilitation. See Figures 11B-18A through 11B-18C.*

*2. Where the enforcing agency determines that compliance with any regulation of this section would create an unreasonable hardship, a variance or waiver may be granted when equivalent facilitation is provided.*

*3. Parking spaces may be provided which would require a person with a disability to wheel or walk behind other than accessible parking spaces when the enforcing agency determines that compliance with these regulations or providing equivalent facilitation would create an unreasonable hardship.*

**NOTE:** *See Section 101.17.11, Item 4.*

**4. Slope of parking space.** *Surface slopes of accessible parking spaces shall be the minimum possible and shall not exceed 1 unit vertical to 50 units horizontal (2% slope) in any direction.*

**1129B.5 Identification of Parking Spaces for Off-Street Parking Facilities.** *Each parking space reserved for persons with disabilities shall be identified by a reflectorized sign permanently posted immediately adjacent to and visible from each stall or space, consisting of a profile view of a wheelchair with occupant in white on dark blue background. The sign shall not be smaller than 70 square inches (4516 mm<sup>2</sup>) in area and, when in a path of travel, shall be posted at a minimum height of 80 inches (2032 mm) from the bottom of the sign to the parking space finished grade. Signs may also be centered on the wall at the interior end of the parking space at a minimum height of 36 inches (914 mm) from the parking space finished grade, ground or sidewalk. Spaces complying with Section 1129B.4, Item 2 shall have an additional sign stating "Van-Accessible" mounted below the symbol of accessibility.*

*An additional sign shall also be posted in a conspicuous place at each entrance to off-street parking facilities, or immediately adjacent to and visible from each stall or space. The sign shall not be less than 17 inches by 22 inches (432 mm by 559 mm) in size with lettering not less than 1 inch (25 mm) in height, which clearly and conspicuously states the following:*

*"Unauthorized vehicles parked in designated accessible spaces not displaying distinguishing placards or license plates issued for persons with disabilities may be towed away at owner's expense. Towed vehicles may be reclaimed at \_\_\_\_\_ or by telephoning \_\_\_\_\_."*

*Blank spaces are to be filled in with appropriate information as a permanent part of the sign.  
In addition to the above requirements, the surface of each accessible parking space or stall shall have a surface identification duplicating either of the following schemes:*

*1. By outlining or painting the stall or space in blue and outlining on the ground in the stall or space in white or suitable contrasting color a profile view depicting a wheelchair with occupant; or*

*2. By outlining a profile view of a wheelchair with occupant in white on blue background. The profile view shall be located so that it is visible to a traffic enforcement officer when a vehicle is properly parked in the space and shall be 36 inches high by 36 inches wide (914 mm by 914 mm). See Figures 11B–18A through 11B–18C.*

### **Section 1130B — PARKING STRUCTURES**

*All entrances to and vertical clearances within parking structures shall have a minimum vertical clearance of 8 feet 2 inches (2489 mm) where required for accessibility to accessible parking spaces.*

**EXCEPTIONS:** *1. Where the enforcing agency determines that compliance with Section 1130B would create an unreasonable hardship, an exception may be granted when equivalent facilitation is provided.*

*2. This section shall not apply to existing buildings where the enforcing agency determines that, due to legal or physical constraints, compliance with these regulations or equivalent facilitation would create an unreasonable hardship. See Section 101.17.11, Item 4.*

### **Section 1131B — PASSENGER DROP-OFF AND LOADING ZONES**

**1131B.1 Location.** *When provided, passenger drop-off and loading zones shall be located on accessible route of travel.*

#### **1131B.2 Passenger Loading Zones.**

**1. General.** *Where provided, one passenger drop-off and loading zone shall provide an access aisle at least 60 inches (1524 mm) wide and 20 feet (6096 mm) long adjacent and parallel to the vehicle pull-up space. Such zones shall be located on a surface with a slope not exceeding 1 unit vertical in 50 units horizontal (2% slope). If there are curbs between the access aisle and the vehicle pull-up space, a curb ramp shall be provided.*

**2. Vertical Clearance.** *Provide minimum vertical clearance of 114 inches (2896 mm) at accessible passenger loading zones and along at least one vehicle access route to such areas from site entrances and exits.*

**1131B.3 Valet Parking.** *Valet parking facilities shall provide a passenger loading zone complying with Section 1131B.2 above and shall be located on an accessible route to the entrance of the facility. The parking space requirements of Sections 1129B through 1130B apply to facilities with valet parking.*

**1131B.4 Bus Stop Pads and Shelters.** *Where provided, provide bus stop pads 96 inches (2438 mm) long (measured parallel to curb or road edge) to the maximum extent allowed by legal or site constraints. Bus stop pads shall connect to an accessible route. Newly constructed bus stop pads must provide a square curb surface between the pad and road or other detectable warning.*

*Bus stop pads shall be at same slope as roadway in the direction parallel to roadway, and maximum 2 percent slope perpendicular to roadway.*

*Where provided, provide bus stop shelters installed so as to permit a wheelchair user to enter the shelter and access a clear floor area of 30 by 48 inches (762 mm by 1219 mm), completely within the shelter. Bus stop shelters shall connect to an accessible route and to bus stop pads.*

## **Section 1132B — OUTDOOR OCCUPANCIES**

**1132B.1 General.** *Outdoor occupancies shall be accessible as required in this chapter. See also the general requirements listed in Section 1114B.1.1.*

**1132B.2 Parks and Recreational Areas.** *The following parks and recreational areas shall comply with these regulations.*

**EXCEPTIONS:** *1. In existing buildings, when the enforcing agency determines that compliance would create an unreasonable hardship, a variance shall be granted when equivalent facilitation is provided.*

*2. Where the enforcing agency finds that, in specific areas, the natural environment would be materially damaged by compliance with these regulations, such areas shall be subject to these regulations only to the extent that such material damage would not occur.*

*3. Automobile access shall not be provided or paths of travel shall not be made accessible when the enforcing agency determines that compliance with these regulations would create an unreasonable hardship.*

**1. Campsites.** *Campsites, a minimum of two and no fewer than three for each 100 campsites provided, shall be accessible by level path or ramp and shall have travel routes with slopes not exceeding 1 unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (8.33% slope) to sanitary facilities. Permanent sanitary facilities serving campgrounds shall be accessible to wheelchair occupants.*

**2. Beaches, picnic areas.** *Beaches, picnic areas, day-use areas, vista points and similar areas shall be accessible.*

3. **Sanitary facilities.** *Sanitary facilities, to the extent that such facilities are provided, each public use area that is accessible to wheelchair occupants by automobile, walks or other paths of travel.*

4. **Boat docks.** *Boat docks, fishing piers, etc., shall be accessible.*

5. **Parking lots.** *Parking lots shall be provided with accessible parking spaces and with curb cuts leading to all adjacent walks, paths or trails.*

6. **Trails and paths.** *Trails, paths and nature walk areas, or portions of these, shall be constructed with gradients which will permit at least partial use by wheelchair occupants. Hard surface paths or walks shall be provided to serve buildings and other functional areas.*

7. **Nature trails.** *Nature trails and similar educational and informational areas shall be accessible to the blind by the provision of rope guidelines, raised Arabic numerals and symbols for identification, information signs, and related guide and assistance devices.*

**NOTE:** *For museums, orientation buildings, visitor centers, office buildings, retail stores, restaurants, etc., and sanitary facilities serving these uses, see Sections 1104B through 1111B and sections listed in Section 1114B.1.1.*

**1132B.3 Highway Rest Areas.** *The specific standards of accessibility for highway rest areas and similar facilities shall be as follows in Section 1132B.3.1, subject to other provisions in these regulations.*

**1132B.3.1 Permanent facilities.** *At least one kind of permanent functional area or facility, as applicable, shall be accessible to persons with disabilities, including:*

1. *A sanitary facility for each sex.*
2. *At least one picnic table and one additional table for each 20 tables, or fraction thereof provided.*
3. *Information and display areas.*
4. *Drinking fountains.*
5. *At least one parking space.*
6. *Curb ramps conforming to Section 1127B.5 shall be provided at pedestrian ways where appropriate.*

### **Division III – ACCESSIBILITY FOR ENTRANCES, EXITS AND PATHS OF TRAVEL**

*This division includes additional requirements which supersede less restrictive requirements in Chapter 10 where access is required.*

#### **SECTION 1133B GENERAL ACCESSIBILITY FOR ENTRANCES, EXITS AND PATHS OF TRAVEL**

**1133B.1 Building Accessibility.** *See Chapter 10, Section 1003.2.10.*

**1133B.1.1 Entrances.**



**1133B.1.1.1 Entrances and exterior ground floor exit doors.**

**1133B.1.1.1.1** All entrances and exterior ground-floor exit doors to buildings and facilities shall be made accessible to persons with disabilities. Doorways shall have a minimum clear opening of 32 inches (813 mm) with the door open 90 degrees, measured between the face of the door and the opposite stop. Openings more than 24 inches (610 mm) in depth shall comply with Sections 1118B.1 and 1118B.2.

**EXCEPTIONS:** 1. Exterior ground-floor exits serving smoke-proof enclosures, stairwells and exit doors servicing stairs only need not be made accessible.

2. Exits in excess of those required by Section 1114B.2.1, and which are more than 24 inches (610 mm) above grade are not required to be accessible. Such doors shall have signs warning that they are not accessible. Warning signs shall comply with Section 1117B.5.

3. In existing buildings where the enforcing agency determines that compliance with the building standards of this section would create an unreasonable hardship, an exception shall be granted when equivalent facilitation is provided. Equivalent facilitation would require at least one entrance to be accessible to and usable by persons with disabilities.

4. These building standards shall not apply to existing buildings when legal or physical constraints will not allow compliance with these building standards or equivalent facilitation without creating an unreasonable hardship. See Section 101.17.11, Item 4, Special Conditions for Persons with Disabilities Requiring Appeals Action Ratification.

**1133B.1.1.1.2 Temporary restrictions.** During periods of partial or restricted use of a building or facility, the entrances used for primary access shall be accessible to and usable by persons with disabilities.

**1133B.1.1.1.3 Recessed doormats.** Recessed doormats shall be adequately anchored to prevent interference with wheelchair traffic.

**1133B.1.1.1.4 Gates.** All gates, including ticket gates, shall meet all applicable specifications for doors.

**1133B.2 Doors.**

**1133B.2.1 Type of lock or latch.** See Chapter 10, Section 1003.3.1.8.

**1133B.2.2 Width and height.** See Chapter 10, Section 1003.3.1.3a.

**1133B.2.3 Hinged doors.** For hinged doors, the opening width shall be measured with the door positioned at an angle of 90 degrees from its closed position.

**1133B.2.3.1 Pairs of doors.** Where a pair of doors is utilized, at least one of the doors shall provide a clear, unobstructed opening width of 32 inches (813 mm) with the leaf positioned at an angle of 90 degrees from its closed position.

**1133B.2.3.2 Automatic doors.** When an automatic door operator is utilized to operate a pair of doors, at least one of the doors shall provide a clear, unobstructed opening width of 32 inches (813 mm) with the door positioned at an angle of 90 degrees from its closed position.

**EXCEPTIONS:** 1. The provisions of Section 1133B.2.3 shall not apply to existing buildings, except when otherwise required under conditions applicable to access for persons with disabilities. In existing buildings, the following shall apply:

Where the occupant load is less than 10, except Group I, Division 1 Occupancies, doorways may be 30 inches (762 mm) in clear width.

Where occupant load is greater than 10 and it is determined that compliance with Section 1133B.2.3 would create an unreasonable hardship, doorways may be 30 inches (762 mm) in clear width.

2. In existing buildings, the provisions of this section shall not apply when legal or physical constraints will not allow compliance with these building standards or equivalent facilitation without creating an unreasonable hardship. See Section 101.17.11, Item 4.

**1133B.2.3.3 Revolving doors.** Revolving doors shall not be used as a required entrance for persons with disabilities.

**1133B.2.3.4 Turnstiles, rails and pedestrian controls.** Where turnstiles and crowd control barriers are utilized in a facility for the purpose of providing fully controlled access, such as where an admission price is charged, a door or gate that is accessible to persons with disabilities shall be provided adjacent to each turnstile exit or entrance. This alternate passageway shall be maintained in an unlocked condition during business hours and the door or gate shall not activate a publicly audible alarm system. The door or gate may be latched where all gates are restricted and controlled by an attendant and a sign is posted stating, "all gates are restricted and controlled by an attendant." The accessible door or gate shall provide the same use pattern. Where posts, rails or other pedestrian controls are utilized to create crowd control aisles or lanes, a minimum of one lane shall be accessible and shall provide a minimum aisle width no less than indicated in Figure 11B-5E (a) and (b) with 32 inches (813 mm) of clear opening.

**EXCEPTION:** In existing buildings, Section 1133B.2.3 shall not apply when physical constraints or equivalent facilitation will not allow compliance with these building standards without creating an unreasonable hardship. See Section 101.17.11, Item 4.

**1133B.2.4 Floor level at doors.** *Regardless of the occupant load, there shall be a floor or landing on each side of a door.*

**1133B.2.4.1 Thresholds.** *The floor or landing shall not be more than  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm) lower than the threshold of the doorway. Change in level between  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch (6 mm) and  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm) shall be beveled with a slope no greater than 1 unit vertical to 2 units horizontal (50% slope). Change in level greater than  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm) shall be accomplished by means of a ramp.*

**NOTE:** [For DSA/AC] See Section 1133B.5.1.

**1133B.2.4.2 Maneuvering clearances at doors.** *Minimum maneuvering clearances at doors shall be as shown in Figure 11B–26A and 11B–26B. The floor or ground area within the required clearances shall be level and clear.*

*The level area shall have a length in the direction of door swing of at least 60 inches (1524 mm) and the length opposite the direction of door swing of 48 inches (1219 mm) as measured at right angles to the plane of the door in its closed position.*

**EXCEPTIONS:** *1. The length opposite the direction of door swing shall be a minimum of 44 inches (1118 mm) where the door has no closer and approach to the door by a person in a wheelchair can be made from the latch side, or if the door has neither latch nor closer and approach can be made from the hinge side. See Figure 11B–26A and 11B–26B.*

*2. In Group R Occupancies, the level area shall have a length both in the direction of door swing and opposite the direction of door swing of 44 inches (1118 mm) as measured at right angles to the plane of the door in its closed position.*

**1133B.2.4.3** *The width of the level area on the side to which the door swings shall extend 24 inches (610 mm) past the strike edge of the door for exterior doors and 18 inches (457 mm) past the strike edge for interior doors.*

**NOTE:** *Twenty-four inches (610 mm) is preferred for strike-side clearance.*

**1133B.2.4.4** *The space between two consecutive door openings in a vestibule, serving other than a required exit stairway shall provide a minimum of 48 inches (1219 mm) of clear space from any door opening into such vestibule when the door is positioned at an angle of 90 degrees from its closed position. Doors in a series shall swing either in the same direction or away from the space between the doors.*

**1133B.2.5 Closer—effort to operate doors.** *Maximum effort to operate doors shall not exceed 8½ pounds (38 N) for exterior doors and 5 pounds (22 N) for interior doors, such pull or push effort being applied at right angles to hinged doors and at the center plane of sliding or folding doors. Compensating devices or automatic door operators may be utilized to meet the above standards. When fire doors are required, the maximum effort to operate the door may be increased to the minimum allowable by the appropriate administrative authority, not to exceed 15 pounds (66.72 N).*

**1133B.2.5.1** *Hand-activated door opening hardware shall be centered between 30 inches (762 mm) and 44 inches (1118 mm) above the floor. Latching and locking doors that are hand-activated and which are in a path of travel shall be operable with a single effort by lever-type hardware, panic bars, push-pull activating bars or other hardware designed to provide passage without requiring the ability to grasp the opening hardware. Locked exit doors shall operate as above in egress direction. Doors to individual hotel or motel units shall operate similarly, except that when a bolt and unlatching operation is key operated from corridor or exterior side of unit door, large bow keys 2 inches (51 mm) (full bow) or 1¼ inches (32 mm) (half bow) shall be provided in lieu of lever-type hardware on the corridor side. Separate dead-lock activation on room side of corridor doors in hotels or motels shall have lever handle or large thumb turn on an easily reached location.*

**1133B.2.6 Smooth surface.** *The bottom 10 inches (254 mm) of all doors except automatic and sliding shall have a smooth, uninterrupted surface to allow the door to be opened by a wheelchair footrest without creating a trap or hazardous condition. Where narrow frame doors are used, a 10-inch (254 mm) high smooth panel shall be installed on the push side of the door, which will allow the door to be opened by a wheelchair footrest without creating a trap or hazardous condition.*

**1133B.3 Corridors, Hallways and Exterior Exit Balconies.**

**1133B.3.1 Corridor and hallway widths.** *Every corridor and hallway serving an occupant load of 10 or more shall not be less than 44 inches (1118 mm) in width. Corridors and hallways serving an occupant load of less than 10 shall not be less than 36 inches (914 mm) in width.*

**1133B.3.2 Corridors and hallways over 200 feet (60 960 mm).** *Corridors and hallways that are located on an accessible route and exceed 200 feet (60 960 mm) in length shall have a minimum clear width of 60 inches (1524 mm) clear width, then passing spaces at least 60 inches by 60 inches (1524 mm by 1524 mm) shall be located at reasonable intervals not to exceed 200 feet (60 960 mm). A “T” intersection of two corridors or walks is an acceptable passing place*

**EXCEPTIONS:** *1. In existing buildings, when the enforcing agency determines that compliance with any building standard under this section would create an unreasonable hardship, an exception to such building standard shall be granted when equivalent facilitation is provided.*

*2. In existing buildings, the provisions of this section shall not apply when legal or physical constraints will not allow compliance with these building standards or equivalent facilitation without creating an unreasonable hardship. See Section 101.17.11, Item 4.*

**1133B. 4Stairways.**

**1133B.4.1 Handrails.**

**1133B.4.1.1 Required handrails.** *See Chapter 10, Section 1003.3.3.6a.*

**1133B.4.2 Handrail Configuration.**

**1133B.4.2.1** *Handrails shall be 34 to 38 inches (864 to 965 mm) above the nosing of the treads.*

**1133B.4.2.2** *Handrails shall extend a minimum of 12 inches (305 mm) beyond the top nosing and 12 inches (305 mm), plus the tread width, beyond the bottom nosing.*

**1133B.4.2.3** *Ends shall be returned or shall terminate in newel posts or safety terminals. or extend out into the landing.*

**1133B.4.2.4** *Where the extension of the handrail in the direction of the stair run would create a hazard, the termination of the extension shall be made either rounded or returned smoothly to floor, wall or post. Where the stairs are continuous from landing to landing, the inner rail shall be continuous and need not extend out into the landing.*

**1133B.4.2.5** *Handrails projecting from a wall shall have a space of 1<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub> inches (38 mm) between the wall and the handrail.*

*Handrails may be located in a recess if the recess is a maximum of 3 inches (76 mm) deep and extends at least 18 inches (457 mm) above the top of the rail. Handrails shall not rotate in their fittings.*

**1133B.4.2.6 Handgrips.**

**1133B.4.2.6.1** *The handgrip portion of handrails shall be not less than 1<sup>1</sup>/<sub>4</sub> inches (32 mm) nor more than 1<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub> inches (38 mm) in cross-sectional nominal dimension or the shape shall provide an equivalent gripping surface. The handgrip portion of handrails shall have a smooth surface with no sharp corners. Gripping surfaces (top or sides) shall be uninterrupted by newel posts, other construction elements or obstructions. Any wall or other surface adjacent to the handrail shall be free of sharp or abrasive elements. Edges shall have a minimum radius of 1/8 inch (3.2 mm).*

**EXCEPTIONS:** *1. In existing buildings when the enforcing agency determines that compliance with any requirement under Section 1133B.4.2 would create an unreasonable hardship, an exception to the requirement for persons with disabilities may be granted when equivalent facilitation is provided.*

*2. These regulations shall not apply in existing buildings where legal or physical constraints will not allow compliance with these regulations or equivalent facilitation without creating an unreasonable hardship. See Section 101.17.11, Item 4.*

**1133B.4.3 Stairway signage.** *Stairways in buildings that are of two or more stories in height must comply with the requirements of Section 1117B.5.2.*

*The information shall be presented using raised Arabic numerals and raised braille symbols which conform to Section 1117B.5.2. The sign shall be located 5 feet (1524 mm) above the finished floor. The sign shall be located immediately adjacent to the door on the strike side.*

*The sign is to be positioned in such a manner as to provide uninterrupted visibility when the door is in the open or closed position.*

**1133B.4.4 Striping for the visually impaired.** *The upper approach and the lower tread of each stair shall be marked by a strip of clearly contrasting color at least 2 inches (51 mm) wide placed parallel to and [not more than 1 inch (25.4 mm) from] the nose of the step or landing to alert the visually impaired. The strip shall be of material that is at least as slip resistant as the other treads of the stair.*

*Where stairways occur outside a building, the upper approach and all treads shall be marked by a strip of clearly contrasting color at least 2 inches (51 mm) wide and placed parallel to and not more than 1 inch (25.4 mm) from the nose of the step or landing to alert the visually impaired. The strip shall be of a material that is at least as slip resistant as the other treads of the stair. A painted strip shall be acceptable.*

#### **1133B.4.5 Treads, nosing and risers.**

**1133B.4.5.1 Treads.** *All tread surfaces shall be slip resistant. Weather-exposed stairs and their approaches shall be designed so that water will not accumulate on the walking surfaces. Treads shall have a smooth, rounded or chamfered exposed edges, and no abrupt edges at the nosing (lower front edge).*

**1133B.4.5.2 Nosing.** *Nosing shall not project more than 1<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub> inch (38 mm) past the face of the riser below.*

**1133B.4.5.3 Open risers are not permitted.** *On any given flight of stairs, all steps shall have uniform riser height and uniform tread widths consistent with Section 1133B.4. Stair treads shall be no less than 11 inches (279 mm) deep, measured from riser to riser. See Figure 11B-35. Risers shall be sloped or the underside of the nosing shall have an angle not less than 60 degrees from the horizontal.*

**EXCEPTIONS:** *1. In existing buildings, when the enforcing agency determines that compliance with any requirement under this section would create an unreasonable hardship, an exception to persons with disabilities requirements may be granted when equivalent facilitation is provided.*

*2. These regulations shall not apply to existing buildings when legal or physical constraints will not allow compliance with these regulations or equivalent facilitation without creating an unreasonable hardship. See Section 101.17.11, Item 4.*

#### **1133B.5 Ramps.**

**1133B.5.1 General.** *Ramps used as exits shall conform to the provisions of this section. Any path of travel shall be considered a ramp if its slope is greater than 1 foot (305 mm) rise in 20 feet (6096 mm) of horizontal run (5% gradient). The least possible slope shall be used for any ramp.*

**1133B.5.2 Width.** *The width of ramps shall be as required for stairways and exits.*

**1133B.5.2.1 Widths as for exits.** *The width of ramps shall be as required for stairways and exits.*

**1133B.5.2.2 Primary entrance and special occupancy.** *Pedestrian ramps serving primary entrances to buildings having an occupant load of 300 or more shall have a minimum clear width of 60 inches (1524 mm). Ramps serving Group R Occupancies may be 36 inches (914 mm) clear width when the occupant load is 50 or less. All other pedestrian ramps shall have a minimum width of 48 inches (1219 mm).*

**1133B.5.3 Slope.** *The maximum slope of a ramp that serves any exit way, provides access for persons with physical disabilities or is in the path of travel shall be 1-foot (305 mm) rise in 12 feet (3658 mm) of horizontal run (8.3% gradient).*

**1133B.5.3.1** *The cross slope of ramp surfaces shall be no greater than 1 unit vertical in 50 units horizontal (2% slope).*

**1133B.5.4 Landings.** *Ramp landings shall be installed as follows.*

**1133B.5.4.1 Location of landings.** *Landings shall be provided at the top and bottom of each ramp. Intermediate landings shall be provided at intervals not exceeding 30 inches (762 mm) of vertical rise and at each change of direction. Landings are not considered in determining the maximum horizontal distance of each ramp.*

**NOTE:** *Examples of ramp dimensions are as follows:*

SLOPE	MAXIMUM RISE (inches)	MAXIMUM HORIZONTAL PROJECTION (feet)
	( 25.4 for mm)	( 304.8 for mm)
1:12	30	30
1:16	30	40
1:20	30	50
1:15	30	37.5

**1133B.5.4.2 Size of top landings.** *Top landings shall be not less than 60 inches (1524 mm) wide and shall have a length of not less than 60 inches (1524 mm) in the direction of ramp run.*

**1133B.5.4.3 Encroachment of doors.** *See Chapter 10, Section 1003.3.4.4.*

**1133B.5.4.4 Strike edge extension.** *The width of the landing shall extend 24 inches (610 mm) past the strike edge of any door or gate for exterior ramps and 18 inches (457 mm) past the strike edge for interior ramps.*

**1133B.5.4.5 Landing width.** *At bottom and intermediate landings, the width shall be at least the same as required for the ramps.*



**1133B.5.4.6 Change of direction.** *Intermediate and bottom landings at a change of direction in excess of 30 degrees shall have a dimension in the direction of ramp run of not less than 72 inches (1829 mm) to accommodate the handrail extension.*

**1133B.5.4.7 Other intermediate landings.** *Other intermediate landings shall have a dimension in the direction of ramp run of not less than 60 inches (1524 mm).*

**1133B.5.4.8** *For existing ramps or ramps not covered by Section 1003.3.4.4, landings shall be provided as set forth in Section 1003.3.4.4.*

**1133B.5.4.9 Hazards.** *Required ramps shall have a curb at least 2 inches (51 mm) high, or a wheel guide rail 2 to 4 inches (51 to 102 mm) high on each side of the ramp landing that has a vertical drop exceeding 4 inches (102 mm) and that is not bounded by a wall or fence.*

**1133B.5.5 Handrails for ramps.**

**1133B.5.5.1 [For DSA/AC]** *Handrails are required on ramps that provide access if slope exceeds 1 foot (305 mm) rise in 20 feet (6096 mm) of horizontal run (5% gradient), except that at exterior door landings, handrails are not required on ramps less than 6 inches (152 mm) rise or 72 inches (1829 mm) in length. Handrails shall be placed on each side of each ramp, shall be continuous the full length of the ramp, shall be 34 to 38 inches (864 to 965 mm) above the ramp surface, shall extend a minimum of 1 foot (305 mm) beyond the top and bottom of the ramp and the ends shall be returned. Handrails projecting from a wall shall have a space of not less than 1½ inches (38 mm) between the wall and the handrail. Handrails may be located in a recess if the recess is a maximum of 3 inches (76 mm) deep and extends at least 18 inches (457 mm) above the top of the rail. The grip portion shall not be less than 1¼ inches (32 mm) nor more than 1½ inches (38 mm), or the shape shall provide an equivalent gripping surface and all surfaces shall be smooth with no sharp corners. Handrails shall not rotate within their fittings. Any wall or other surface adjacent to the handrail shall be free of sharp or abrasive elements. Edges shall have a minimum radius of 1/8 inch (3 mm).*

**EXCEPTIONS:** *1. Handrails at ramps immediately adjacent to fixed seating in assembly areas are not required.*

*2. Ramps that require handrails and that serve one individual dwelling unit in Group R, Division 1 or 3 Occupancies may have one handrail except that such ramps open on one or both sides shall have handrails provided on the open side or sides.*

*3. Curb ramps do not require handrails.*

**1133B.5.6 Wheel guides.** *Where the ramp surface is not bounded by a wall or fence and the ramp exceeds 10 feet (3048 mm) in length, the ramp shall comply with one of the following requirements.*

**1133B.5.6.1** *A guide curb a minimum of 2 inches (51 mm) in height shall be provided at each side of the ramp; or*

**1133B.5.6.2** *A wheel guide rail shall be provided, centered 3 inches (76 mm) plus or minus 1 inch (25 mm) above the surface of the ramp.*

**1133B.5.7** *Ramps more than 30 inches (762 mm) above the adjacent ground shall be provided with guardrails as required by Section 509, and handrails as required in Section 1003.3.4.6. Such guardrails shall be continuous from the top of the ramp to the bottom of the ramp.*

**1133B.6 Aisles.**

**1133B.6.1 General.** *Every portion of every building in which are installed seats, tables, merchandise, equipment or similar materials shall be provided with aisles leading to an exit.*

**1133B.6.2 Width.** *Every aisle shall not be less than 36 inches (914 mm) wide if serving only one side, and not less than 44 inches (1118 mm) wide if serving both sides.*

**1133B.7 Walks and Sidewalks.**

**1133B.7.1 Continuous surface.** *Walks and sidewalks subject to these regulations shall have a continuous common surface, not interrupted by steps or by abrupt changes in level exceeding  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm) (see Section 1133B.7.3), and shall be a minimum of 48 inches (1219 mm) in width. Surfaces shall be slip-resistant as follows:*

**1133B.7.1.1 Slopes less than 6 percent.** *Surfaces with a slope of less than 6 percent gradient shall be at least as slip-resistant as that described as a medium salted finish.*

**1133B.7.1.2 Slopes 6 percent or greater.** *Surfaces with a slope of 6 percent gradient shall be slip-resistant.*

**1133B.7.1.3 Surface cross slopes.** *Surface cross slopes shall not exceed  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch (6 mm) per foot except when the enforcing agency finds that due to local conditions it creates an unreasonable hardship, the cross slope shall be increased to a maximum of  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm) per foot for distances not to exceed 20 feet (6096 mm) (2.5% gradient).*

**EXCEPTION:** *When, because of right-of-way restrictions, natural barriers or other existing conditions, the enforcing agency determines that compliance with the 48-inch (1219 mm) clear sidewalk width would create an unreasonable hardship, the clear width may be reduced to 36 inches (914 mm).*

**1133B.7.2 Gratings.** Walks, sidewalks and pedestrian ways shall be free of gratings whenever possible. For gratings located in the surface of any of these areas, grid openings in gratings shall be limited to  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm) in the direction of traffic flow.

**EXCEPTIONS:** 1. Where the enforcing agency determines that compliance with this section would create an unreasonable hardship, an exception may be granted when equivalent facilitation is provided.

2. This section shall not apply in those conditions where, due to legal or physical constraints, the site of the project will not allow compliance with these building standards or equivalent facilitation without creating an unreasonable hardship. See Section 101.17.11, Item 4.

**1133B.7.3 Five percent gradient.** When the slope in the direction of travel of any walk exceeds 1 unit vertical to 20 units horizontal (5% gradient), it shall comply with the provisions of Section 1133B.5.

**1133B.7.4 Changes in level.** Abrupt changes in level along any accessible route shall not exceed  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm). When changes in level do occur, they shall be beveled with a slope no greater than 1 unit vertical to 2 units horizontal (50%), except that level changes not exceeding  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch (6 mm) may be vertical.

When changes in levels greater than  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm) are necessary, they shall comply with the requirements for curb ramps.

**NOTE:** See Section 1127B.5.

**1133B.7.5 Level areas.** Walks shall be provided with a level area not less than 60 inches by 60 inches (1524 mm by 1524 mm) at a door or gate that swings toward the walk, and not less than 48 inches wide by 44 inches (1219 mm by 1118 mm) deep at a door or gate that swings away from the walk. Such walks shall extend 24 inches (610 mm) to the side of the strike edge of a door or gate that swings toward the walk. (For example, see Figure 11B-26B.)

**1133B.7.6 Walks with continuous gradients.** All walks with continuous gradients shall have level areas at least 5 feet (1524 mm) in length at intervals of at least every 400 feet (121 920 mm).

### **1133B.8 Hazards.**

**1133B.8.1 Warning curbs.** Abrupt changes in level, except between a walk or sidewalk and an adjacent street or driveway, exceeding 4 inches (102 mm) in a vertical dimension, such as at planters or fountains located in or adjacent to walks, sidewalks or other pedestrian ways, shall be identified by curbs projecting at least 6 inches (152 mm) in height above the walk or sidewalk surface to warn the blind of a potential drop off.

*When a guardrail or handrail is provided, no curb is required when a guide rail is provided centered 3 inches (76 mm) plus or minus 1 inch (25 mm) above the surface of the walk or sidewalk, the walk is 5 percent or less gradient or no adjacent hazard exists.*

**1133B.8.2 Overhanging obstructions.** *Any obstruction that overhangs a pedestrian's way shall be a minimum of 80 inches (2032 mm) above the walking surface as measured from the bottom of the obstruction. Where a guy support is used parallel to a path of travel, including, but not limited to, sidewalks, a guy brace, sidewalk guy or similar device shall be used to prevent an overhanging obstruction as defined (see Figure 11B-28).*

*Hazards such as drop-offs adjacent to walk ways or overhanging obstructions can be dangerous to persons with sight problems. This section addresses these situations.*

**1133B.8.3 Detectable warnings at transit boarding platforms.** *Transit boarding platforms shall have a detectable warning texture extending the full length of the loading area. This detectable warning texture shall have the following features:*

*Width 24 to 36 inches (610 mm to 914 mm) placed at the edge of the drop-off or safe area.*

*Durable, slip-resistant material having a surface texture composed of raised, truncated domes in a staggered pattern with a diameter of nominal 0.9 inch (22.88 mm) at the base tapering to 0.45 inch (11.4 mm) at the top, a height of nominal 0.2 inch (5.08 mm), and a center-to-center spacing of nominal 2.35 inches (59.6 mm) in compliance with Figure 11B-23A. "Nominal" as used here shall be in accordance with California State Referenced Standards Code Section 12-11-102. The detectable warning shall contrast visually with adjoining surfaces, either light on dark or dark on light. The material used to provide contrast shall be an integral part of the walking surface. Warning surfaces shall differ from adjoining walking surfaces in resiliency or sound on cane contact. This surface shall be reserved for warning.*

*Color yellow conforming to Federal Color No. 33538, as shown in Table IV of Standard No. 595B. Where the color value contrast between the yellow warning and the main walking surface is less than 70 percent, a 1 inch-wide (25 mm) black strip shall separate the yellow warning from the main walking surface. Contrast shall be determined by:*

*Contrast =  $[(B1-B2/B1)] \times 100$  percent where B1 = light reflectance value (LRV) of the lighter area and B2 = light reflectance value (LRV) of the darker area.*

**1133B.8.4 Detectable directional texture at boarding platforms.** *At transit boarding platforms, the pedestrian access shall be identified with a detectable directional texture. This detectable directional texture shall comply with Figure 11B–23B and shall be 0.1 inch (2.54 mm) in height that tapers off to 0.04 inch (1.02 mm), with bars raised 0.2 inch (5.08 mm) from the surface. The raised bars shall be 1.3 inches (33.02 mm) wide and 3 inches (76 mm) from center-to-center of each bar. This surface shall differ from adjoining walking surfaces in resiliency or sound on cane contact. The color of the directional texture shall comply with Section 1133B.8.3. This surface will be placed directly behind the yellow detectable warning texture specified in Section 1133B.8.3, aligning with all doors of the transit vehicles, where passengers will embark. The width of the directional texture shall be equal to the width of the transit vehicle's door opening. The depth of the texture shall not be less than 36 inches (914 mm).*

**1133B.8.5 Detectable warnings at hazardous vehicular areas.** *If a walk crosses or adjoins a vehicular way, and the walking surfaces are not separated by curbs, railings or other elements between the pedestrian areas and vehicular areas, the boundary between the areas shall be defined by a continuous detectable warning which is 36 inches (914 mm) wide, complying with Sections 1133B.8.3 through 1133B.8.5.*

#### **Division IV-ACCESSIBILITY FOR EXISTING BUILDINGS**

*Note: This division replaces Appendix Chapter 11, Division II, for use in California.*

#### **Section 1134B — ACCESSIBILITY FOR EXISTING BUILDINGS**

**1134B.1 Scope.** *The provisions of this division apply to renovation, structural repair, alteration and additions to existing buildings, including those identified as historic buildings. This division identifies minimum standards for removing architectural barriers, and providing and maintaining accessibility to existing buildings and their related facilities.*

**1134B.2 General.** *All existing buildings and facilities, when alterations, structural repairs or additions are made to such buildings or facilities, shall comply with all provisions of Division I, New Buildings, except as modified by this division. These requirements shall apply only to the area of specific alteration, structural repair or addition and shall include those areas listed below:*

**1134B.2.1** *A primary entrance to the building or facility and the primary path of travel to the specific area of alteration, structural repair or addition, and sanitary facilities, drinking fountains and public telephones serving the area.*

**EXCEPTIONS:** *1. When the total construction cost of alterations, structural repairs or additions does not exceed a valuation threshold of \$50,000, based on January 1981, “ENR US20 Cities” average construction cost index of 3372.02 (Engineering News Record, McGraw Hill Publishing Company), and the enforcing agency finds that compliance with this code creates an unreasonable hardship, compliance shall be limited to the actual work of the project. The enforcing agency shall annually update the valuation threshold to a current amount based on the increase in the index since the last figure used. (For example, the 1995 amount is \$80,710.37.) For purposes of this exception, an unreasonable hardship exists where the cost of providing an accessible entrance, path of travel, sanitary facilities, public phones and drinking fountains, is disproportionate to the cost of the project; that is, where it exceeds 20 percent of the cost of the project without these features.*

*Where the cost of alterations necessary to make these features fully accessible is disproportionate, access shall be provided to the extent that it can be without incurring disproportionate cost. In choosing which accessible elements to provide, priority should be given to those elements that will provide the greatest access in the following order:*

- 1.1 An accessible entrance,*
- 1.2 An accessible route to the altered area,*
- 1.3 At least one accessible restroom for each sex,*
- 1.4 Accessible telephones,*
- 1.5 Accessible drinking fountains, and*
- 1.6 When possible, additional accessible elements such as parking, storage and alarms.*

*The obligation to provide access may not be evaded by performing a series of small alterations to the area served by a single path of travel if those alterations could have been performed as a single undertaking. If an area has been altered without providing an accessible path of travel to that area, and subsequent alterations of that area or a different area on the same path of travel are undertaken within three years of the original alteration, the total cost of alterations to the areas on that path of travel during the preceding three-year period shall be considered in determining whether the cost of making that path of travel accessible is disproportionate. Only alterations undertaken after January 26, 1992, shall be considered in determining if the cost of providing an accessible path of travel is disproportionate to the overall cost of the alterations.*

*2. Certain types of privately funded, multistory buildings and facilities were formerly exempt from accessibility requirements above and below the first floor under this code, but as of the effective date of this regulation are no longer exempt due to more restrictive provisions in the federal Americans with Disabilities Act. In alteration projects involving buildings and facilities previously approved and built without elevators, areas above and below the ground floor are subject to the 20 percent disproportionality provisions described in Exception 1, above, even if the value of the project exceeds the valuation threshold in Exception 1. The types of buildings and facilities are:*

- 2.1 Office buildings and passenger vehicle service stations of three stories or more and 3,000 or more square feet (279 m<sup>2</sup>) per floor.*
- 2.2 Offices of physicians and surgeons.*
- 2.3 Shopping centers.*
- 2.4 Other buildings and facilities three stories or more and more than 3,000 square feet (279 m<sup>2</sup>) per floor if a reasonable portion of services sought and used by the public is available on the accessible level.*

**NOTE:** *For the general privately funded multistory building exception applicable to new construction and alterations, see Section 1103B.1, Exception 2.1.*

*3. Alterations, structural repairs or additions consisting of one or more of the following shall be limited to the actual work of the project:*

- 3.1 Altering one building entrance to meet accessibility requirements.*
- 3.2 Altering one existing toilet facility to meet accessibility requirements.*
- 3.3 Altering existing elevators to meet accessibility requirements.*
- 3.4 Altering existing steps to meet accessibility requirements.*
- 3.5 Altering existing handrails to meet accessibility requirements.*
- 3.6 Alteration solely for the purpose of removing barriers undertaken pursuant to the requirements of Sections 36.402 and 36.404 through 36.406 of Title III of the Department of Justice regulations promulgated pursuant to the Americans with Disabilities Act (Public Law 101–336, 28 C.F.R. Section 36.402, 28 C.F.R. Section 36.404, 28 C.F.R. Section 36.405, and 28 C.F.R. 36.406) or the accessibility requirements of this code as those requirements or regulations now exist or are hereafter amended, including the following:*
  - 3.6.1 Installing ramps*
  - 3.6.2 Making curb cuts in sidewalks and entrances*
  - 3.6.3 Repositioning shelves*
  - 3.6.4 Rearranging tables, chairs, vending machines, display racks, and other furniture*
  - 3.6.5 Repositioning telephones*
  - 3.6.6 Adding raised markings on elevator control buttons*
  - 3.6.7 Installing flashing alarm lights*
  - 3.6.8 Widening doors*

- 3.6.9 *Installing offset hinges to widen doorways*
- 3.6.10 *Eliminating a turnstile or providing an alternative accessible path*
- 3.6.11 *Installing accessible door hardware*
- 3.6.12 *Installing grab bars in toilet stalls*
- 3.6.13 *Rearranging toilet partitions to increase maneuvering space*
- 3.6.14 *Insulating lavatory pipes under sinks to prevent burns*
- 3.6.15 *Installing a raised toilet seat*
- 3.6.16 *Installing a full-length bathroom mirror*
- 3.6.17 *Repositioning the paper towel dispenser in a bathroom*
- 3.6.18 *Creating designated accessible parking spaces*
- 3.6.19 *Installing an accessible paper cup dispenser at an existing inaccessible water fountain*
- 3.6.20 *Removing high-pile, low-density carpeting*
- 3.6.21 *Installing vehicle hand controls.*

4. *Projects which consist only of heating, ventilation, air conditioning, reroofing, electrical work not involving placement of switches and receptacles, cosmetic work that does not affect items regulated by this code, such as painting, equipment not considered to be a part of the architecture of the building or area, such as computer terminals, office equipment, etc., are not considered alteration projects for the purposes of accessibility for persons with disabilities and shall not be subject to this code. For the purposes of this section, the term "construction cost" does not include building permit fees or discretionary permit fees.*

**NOTE:** *The only purpose of this exception is to exclude projects from activating the provisions of this section. The exceptions are not intended to relieve projects from complying with other applicable provisions of this code (e.g., replacement of carpet does not activate the provisions of this section; however, it still must comply with Section 1124B.3).*

## **Section 1135B — HISTORIC PRESERVATION — SPECIAL STANDARDS OF ACCESSIBILITY FOR BUILDINGS WITH HISTORICAL SIGNIFICANCE**

**1135B.1General.** *Qualified historical buildings shall comply with the State Historical Building Code, Part 8, Title 24, of the California Code of Regulations.*



## **Chapter 11C [For DSA/AC] STANDARDS FOR CARD READERS AT GASOLINE FUEL DISPENSING FACILITIES**

### **Section 1101C — CARD-READER DEVICES AT FUEL DISPENSING EQUIPMENT**

**1101C.1General.** *Notwithstanding other requirements in the California Building Code (CBC), only the requirements and additional definitions in this section shall apply to card-reading devices in motor vehicle fuel facilities, except that administrative requirements which are found in Chapter 1 still apply.*

*For purposes of this section, the following additional definitions shall apply:*

**ALTERNATE CARD READER** *shall be defined in this section as functionally equal card reader and control directly attached to or an integral part of the fuel dispenser in addition to the primary card reader which is in integral part of the dispenser.*

**FREE-STANDING PEDESTAL** *is a card-reading device which controls one or more remote fuel dispensers that have no card reader as an integral part of the fuel dispenser.*

**LEVEL ACCESSIBLE AREA**, *for the purposes of this section, shall mean a slope of not more than 2 percent in front of the dispensing device; however, the slope may extend to 5 percent where the enforcing authority determines that, due to unusual site conditions, the 2 percent gradient is not obtainable.*

**PATH OF TRAVEL** *shall include the clearance requirements stated in Chapter 11B for Wheelchair Passage Width, and Relationship of Maneuvering Clearances to Wheelchair Spaces, except that pump nozzles and hoses may overlap required clearances.*

**TYPE OF MOTOR FUEL** *shall mean gasoline, diesel, compressed natural gas, methanol, electricity or ethanol.*

### **Section 1102C — APPLICATION**

*This section shall apply to equipment located at the following facilities:*

- 1. New motor vehicle fuel facilities.*
- 2. Existing motor vehicle fuel facilities built before the effective date of this section when:*
  - 2.1 Remodeling or reconstruction includes removal and replacement of one or more islands and associated piping and tank(s); or*

*2.2 Remodeling includes reconstruction or removal and replacement of fuel islands at facilities that provide free-standing pedestal card readers.*

### **Section 1103C — NUMBER OF ACCESSIBLE CARD-READING DEVICES REQUIRED**

*Where only one card-reading device is installed for use with any type of motor fuel, it shall meet the required features of this section. When more than one card-reading location is available for a specific type of motor fuel, a minimum of two for that type shall have the accessible features of this section.*

### **Section 1104C — REQUIRED FEATURES**

*Card-reading devices at motor vehicle fuel facilities shall be accessible by complying with only the following:*

*1. The highest operable part of each primary or alternate card reader shall be no more than 54 inches (1372 mm) measured from the base of the fuel dispenser. Where card readers are located on free-standing pedestals, the card-reading control function shall be no more than 54 inches (1372 mm) above an accessible level area which is served by an accessible path of travel.*

**EXCEPTION:** *If an enforcing agency requires that fuel dispensers or card-reading devices be placed in a manner where the card-reading device exceeds the requirements described herein, the provisions of Section 1104C do not apply. Any enforcing agency having jurisdiction over retail fueling facilities may not require islands or impose other regulations which conflict with this section, unless the agency documents and justifies the specific necessity for such a rule or ordinance and complies with the requirements of Health and Safety Code Section 18941.*

*2. An accessible path of travel shall be provided to the base of all fuel dispensers required to meet the provisions of this section. Such fuel dispensers shall be mounted on the accessible level area.*

*3. An accessible level area shall be provided which is minimally 30 inches by 48 inches (762 mm by 1219 mm) level and clear. This area shall be provided within 10 inches (254 mm) in plan view of the face of the controls and shall be unobstructed by any features, except pump nozzles and hoses, with the long side of this space parallel to and centered [plus or minus 9 inches (229 mm)] with the face of the card-reader controls. (See Figures 11C-1 and 11C-2.)*

### **Section 1105C — PROTECTION OF DISPENSERS MOUNTED AT GRADE**

*Dispensers mounted at grade shall be protected from vehicular damage as required by Section 5201.5.1, Part 9, Title 24 (California Fire Code).*

## Chapter 30

# ELEVATORS, DUMBWAITERS, ESCALATORS AND MOVING WALKS

### SECTION 3003 SPECIAL PROVISIONS

**3003.4.1a [For HCD1, DSA/AC] General--Size of cab and control locations and requirements for accommodation of people with disabilities.** In buildings *two or more stories in height, served by an elevator, or a building served by an elevator required by Chapter 11, or a building served by an elevator required for accessibility by Section 101.17, all elevators provided shall accommodate a wheelchair.*

**EXCEPTIONS:** **1.** *When the enforcing agency determines that compliance with any regulation under this section would create an unreasonable hardship, an exception to such regulation shall be granted when equivalent facilitation is provided, and where it can be demonstrated that a person using a wheelchair can enter and operate the elevator.*  
**2.** *These provisions shall not apply to existing buildings when legal or physical constraints will not allow compliance with these regulations or equivalent facilitation without creating an unreasonable hardship. See Section 101.17.*

**3003.4.2 Operation and leveling.** The elevator shall be automatic and be provided with a self-leveling feature that will automatically bring the car to the floor landings with a tolerance of plus or minus 1/2 inch (12.7 mm) under normal loading and unloading conditions. This self-leveling shall, within its zone, be entirely automatic and independent of the operating device and shall correct the overtravel or undertravel. The car shall also be maintained approximately level with the landing, irrespective of load. *[For HCD1, DSA/AC] The clearance between the car platform sill and the edge of the hoistway landing shall be no greater than 1 1/4 inches (32mm).*

**3003.4.4 Door size.** Minimum clear width for elevator doors shall be 36 inches (914mm).

**EXCEPTION:** When approved by the building official, the minimum door width may be reduced to 32 inches (813 mm) for car with dimensions as permitted by the exception to Section 3003.4.7.

**3003.4.5 Door protective and reopening device.** Doors closed by automatic means shall be provided with a door re-opening device that will function to stop and reopen a car door and adjacent hoistway door in case the car door is obstructed while closing. This reopening device shall also be capable of sensing an object or person in the path of the closing door without requiring contact for activation at a nominal 5 inches and 29 inches (127 mm and 737 mm) above the floor.

Door reopening devices shall remain effective for a period of not less than 20 seconds.

*[For HCD 1, DSA/AC] After such an interval, the doors may close in accordance with the requirements of ANSI 17.1-86, the American Society of Mechanical Engineers (ASME) document ASME 17.1-1990.*

**3003.4.6.1a [For HCD1, DSA/AC] Hall call.** The minimum acceptable time from notification that a car is answering a call (lantern and audible signal) until the doors of the car start to close shall be *calculated by the following equation:*

$$T = D / (1.5 \text{ ft/s}) \text{ or } T = D / (445 \text{ mm/s})$$

*Where T is the total time in seconds and D is the distance from a point in the lobby or landing area 60 inches (1524 mm) directly in front of the farthest call button controlling that car to the centerline of its hoistway door (see Figure 30-D). For cars with in-car lanterns, T begins when the lantern is visible from the vicinity of hall call buttons and an audible signal is sounded.*

**3003.4.6.2a [For HCD 1, DSA/AC] Car call.** The minimum acceptable time for doors to remain fully open shall not be less than five seconds.

**3003.4.7b [For HCD 1] Car inside.** The car inside shall allow for the turning of a wheelchair. The minimum clear distance between walls or between wall and door, excluding return panels, shall not be less than 80 inches by 54 inches (2032 mm by 1372 mm) for center-opening doors, and 68 inches by 54 inches (1727 mm by 1372 mm) for side-slide opening doors. See Figure 30-A. Minimum distance from wall to return panel shall not be less than 51 inches (1295mm).

*The centerline of elevator floor buttons shall be no higher than 54 inches (1372 mm) above the finish floor for side approach and 48 inches (1219 mm) for front approach. Except for photoelectric tube bypass switches, emergency controls, including the emergency stop and alarm, shall be grouped in or adjacent to the bottom of the panel and shall be no lower than 2 feet 11 inches (889 mm) from the floor. For multiple controls only, one set must comply with these height requirements. Floor buttons shall be provided with visual indicators to show when each call is registered. The visual indicators shall be extinguished when each call is answered.*

*The emergency telephone handset shall be positioned no higher than 4 feet (1219 mm) above the floor, and the handset cord shall be a minimum of 2 feet 5 inches (737 mm) in length. If the telephone system is located in a closed compartment, the compartment door hardware shall be lever type conforming to the provisions of Section 1004.3, type of lock or latch. Emergency intercommunication shall not require voice communication.*

**NOTE:** *Where possible, a 48-inch (1219mm) maximum height for elevator floor buttons is preferred.*

**3003.4.8a [For HCD1, DSA/AC] Car controls.** *Identification for the visually impaired shall be as follows:*

*Passenger elevator car controls shall have a minimum dimension of 3/4 inch (19.1 mm) and shall be raised 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) plus or minus 1/32 inch (0.8 mm) above the surrounding surface. Control buttons shall be illuminated, shall have square shoulders, and shall be activated by a mechanical motion that is detectable. All control buttons shall be designated by a 5/8 -inch-minimum (15.9 mm), Arabic numeral, standard alphabet character, or standard symbol immediately to the left of the control button. A Braille symbol shall be located immediately below the numeral, character or symbol. A minimum clear space of 3/8 inch (9.5 mm) or other suitable means of separation shall be provided between rows of control buttons.*

**NOTE:** *See Figure 30-B*

*The raised characters shall be white on a black background. Controls and emergency equipment identified by raised symbols shall include, but not be limited to, door open, door close, alarm bell, emergency stop and telephone. The call button for the main entry floor shall be designated by a raised star at the left of the floor designation.*

**3003.4.9b [For DSA/AC] Car position indicator and signal.** *The centerline of the hall call button shall be within 42 inches (1067 mm) of the floor. Buttons shall be a minimum of 3/4 inch (19.1 mm) in size and shall be raised 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) plus or minus 1/32 inch (0.8 mm) above the surrounding surface. Visual indication shall be provided to show each call registered and extinguished when answered. Objects adjacent to, and below, hall call buttons shall not project more than 4 inches (102 mm) from the wall.*

**3003.4.13 Minimum illumination.** *The minimum illumination at the car controls [for HCD 1, DSA/AC], threshold and the landing when the car and landing doors are open shall not be less than 5 footcandles (54 lx).*

**3003.4.15a [For HCD1, DSA/AC] Hall lantern.** A visual and audible signal shall be provided at each hoistway entrance indicating to the prospective passenger the car answering the call and its direction of travel *as follows*:

The visual signal for each direction shall be a minimum of 2 1/2 inches (64 mm) high by 2 1/2 inches (64 mm) *high by 2 1/2 inches (64 mm) wide, and visible from the proximity of the hall call button.*

The audible signal shall sound once for the up direction and twice for the down direction *or of a configuration which distinguishes between up and down elevator travel.*

The center line of the fixture shall be located a minimum of 6 feet (1829 mm) in height from the lobby floor.

The use of in-car lanterns, *located in or on the car door-jambs, visible from the proximity of the hall call buttons and conforming to the above requirements shall or will be acceptable.*

*The use of arrow shapes are preferred for visible signals.*

**3003.4.16a [For HCD1, DSA/AC] Doorjamb marking.** *Passenger elevator landing jambs on all elevator floors shall have the number of the floor on which the jamb is located designated by raised Arabic numerals which are a minimum of 2 inches ( 51 mm) in height and raised Braille symbols which conform to Section 1117B.5.2 located approximately 5 feet (1524 mm) above the floor on the jamb panels on both sides of the door so that they are visible from within the elevator. Raised Braille symbols shall be placed directly to the left of the corresponding raised Arabic numerals. The raised characters shall be on a contrasting background. See Figure 30-B.*

**3003.4.17 [For HCD1, DSA/AC] Location.** *Passenger elevators shall be located near a major path of travel and provisions shall be made to ensure that they remain accessible and usable at all times the building is occupied.*

## **SECTION 3008 [FOR DSA/AC] XSPECIAL ELEVATORS**

**3008.1 Special Access (Wheelchair) Lifts.** *Special access wheelchair lifts may be provided between levels, in lieu of passenger elevator, when the vertical distance between landings, structural design and safeguards is as allowed by the State of California, Division of the State Architect, Access Compliance Section, the Department of Industrial Relations, Division of Occupational Safety and Health, and any applicable safety regulations of other administrative authorities having jurisdiction. If lifts are provided, they shall be designed and constructed to*

*facilitate unassisted entry, operation and exit from the lift, and shall comply with Chapters 11 and 11B and ASME A17.1, Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators, Section XX, 1990. Additionally, lifts may be provided as part of an accessible route only for the following conditions:*

**3008.1.1 [For DSA/AC]** *To provide an accessible route to a performing area in an assembly occupancy, or to a speaking area or similar place (such as a dais or “head table”) in an assembly or Group B Occupancy.*

**3008.1.2** *To comply with the wheelchair viewing position line-of-sight and dispersion requirements of Chapter 11B.*

**3008.1.3** *To provide access to incidental occupiable spaces and rooms which are not open to the general public and which house no more than five persons, including, but not limited to, equipment control rooms and projection booths.*

**3008.1.4** *To provide access where existing site constraints or other constraints make use of a ramp or an elevator infeasible.*

**EXCEPTIONS: 1.** *The provisions of this section shall not apply to existing buildings when physical constraints will not allow compliance with these regulations or equivalent facilitation without creating an unreasonable hardship.*

**NOTE:** *See Section 101.17.*

**2.** *When the enforcing agency determines that compliance with any regulation under this section would create an unreasonable hardship, an exception to such regulation shall be granted when equivalent facilitation is provided.*

**3.** *The installation of lifts as part of an accessible route for additions or alterations is not limited to the four conditions required by Section 3008.*

**3008.1.4.1** *The lift platform or support shall be of sufficient size to accommodate large motorized wheelchairs, per Chapter 11B and shall have a rated capacity of not less than as required by ASME A17.1, 1990.*

**3008.1.4.2** *The rated speed of the platform shall not exceed 20 feet per minute (0.1 m/s) and the operating control shall be the constant pressure type designed so that a person can easily operate it with a disability. A push-bar control designed for use by persons with disabilities or a control that provides equal usability shall be provided.*

**3008.1.4.3** *The lift assembly shall be securely supported to maintain the platform in a level position and to prevent the loosening or displacement of any portion of the unit. All portions of the lift machinery shall be protected from intrusion of water.*

**3008.1.4.4** *Solid, smooth enclosures provided as per ASME 17.1 shall be provided for the platform lift, which provides a reasonable degree of safety for persons with disabilities using the lift and others exposed to the lift, except as provided in 3008.1.4.7. Provide installation with safety devices that may be required per Sections 3008.1.4.5 through 3008.1.4.7.*

**3008.1.4.5** *The top landing shall be equipped with a device, door or gate 42 inches (1067-mm) in height. Each door or gate shall be equipped with both mechanical and electrical contacts, which prevent operation of the platform unless they are properly closed.*

**3008.1.4.6** *"Call-Send" controls shall be provided at each landing in compliance with 11B. Where platform lifts are used to provide barrier-free path of travel requirements, they shall facilitate unassisted entry, operation and exit from the lift.*

**3008.1.4.7.** *When the enclosure required in Section 3008.1.3 is not provided because the lift serves only two landings, the underside of the lifting platform shall be equipped with a safety pan cover which will automatically shut off the lifting device should any obstruction under the platform interfere with its downward travel. The platform shall be provided with a 42 inch-high (1067 mm) solid gate at the bottom landing entrance. A smooth, vertical wall or fascia shall be provided from the sill of the top landing to the bottom landing level.*

**3008.1.4.8** *A pit may be provided to permit the platform to stop flush with the bottom landing level [which shall be protected by a runway enclosure that extends a minimum of 42 inches (1067 mm) above the top landing level], or in lieu of a pit, a ramp shall be provided which does not exceed 1 unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (8.33%) run. The surface of the ramp shall have a nonskid surface.*

**NOTE:** *See Chapter 11B.*



**EXCEPTION:** *If the horizontal run of the ramp does not exceed 15 inches, (381 mm) the maximum rise may be 2 1/2 inches (64 mm), and shall in any case not exceed 2 units vertical in 12 units horizontal (16.7 % slope).*

**3008.1.4.9** *When the lift is hydraulically operated or is of the electric-hydraulic type, relieving switches shall be provided to keep the platform level with the landing at which it has been parked.*

**3008.1.4.10 Lift access landings.** *There shall be a level and clear floor area or landing at each floor or level served by special-access lifts to allow safe access to and exiting from the lift platform.*

**3008.1.4.10.1 Landing size.** *In new construction, the minimum size of landings specified in this section shall be 60 inches by 60 inches (1524 mm by 1524 mm).. Other dimensions may be substituted where it can be demonstrated that a person using a wheelchair measuring 30 inches by 48 inches (762 mm by 1219 mm) can enter and operate the lift safely.*

**3008.1.4.10.2 Relationship to the path of travel.** *Level and clear floor areas or landings as specified in this section shall be part of "path of travel" requirements. See Section 217.*

## Chapter 35

# UNIFORM BUILDING CODE STANDARDS

### Part I B General

## SECTION 3505 B AMENDMENTS TO NATIONAL STANDARDS

### 3505.1 [For DSA/AC, SFM] NFPA 72, 1996 Edition.

*Add a definition of Acentral control station≡as follows:*

**CENTRAL CONTROL STATION** is a central control station for fire department operations as referred to in the California Building Code and California Fire Code. (See also FIRE COMMAND CENTER.)

*Amend Section 1.5.5.4, as follows:*

**Sec. 1.5.5.4. Wiring.** The installation of all wiring, cable and equipment shall be in accordance with California Electrical Code, and specifically with Article 760, Article 770 and Article 800, where applicable. Optical Fiber Cables shall be protected against mechanical injury in accordance with Article 760.

*Add a subsection 1-7.2.2 as follows:*

(b) Record drawings; and

(c) Written operating instructions shall be provided at a location approved by the enforcing agency.

*Add a Section 1-5.4.7.1 as follows:*

**Sec. 1-5.4.7.1. Supplementary Audible Indicating Devices.** Every public, private or parochial school building having an occupant capacity of fifty (50) or more students or more than one classroom shall sound the California uniform fire alarm signal as described in Education Code Sections 32002, 32003 and 32004, which states:

*When the signal is given by means of an apparatus emitting intermittent sound signals, the signal shall be given by repeated successive short intermittent signals for a full period of 10 seconds, to be immediately followed by an intermission or period of silence of five full seconds before the signal is repeated.*

*When the signal is given by means of an apparatus emitting prolonged or continuous sound signals, the signal shall be given by prolonged whistle blast or other sound signal continuously sounded for a full period of 10 seconds, to be immediately followed by an intermission or period of silence of five full seconds before the signal is repeated.*

*In no case shall the signal be given for less than a one-minute period, and then only in the manner indicated.*

**EXCEPTION:** *When a fire alarm system having a distinctive tone, and which is used for no other purpose, is installed, the manner of sounding such alarm shall not be subject to the provisions of Education Code Sections 32002, 32003 and 32004.*

**Amend existing Section 1-5.7.1.2 as follows:**

**Sec. 1-5.7.1.2. Zone of Origin.** *Fire alarm systems serving two or more zones shall identify the zone of origin of the alarm initiation by annunciation or coded signal as required by the enforcing agency.*

**Add a Section 2-4.2.1 as follows:**

**Sec. 2-4.2.1. Alarm Verification.** *The alarm verification feature shall not be used for household fire warning equipment.*

**Add a Section 6-4.5 as follows::**

**Sec. 6-4.5. Notification Appliances for the Hearing Impaired.** *Approved notification appliances for the hearing impaired shall be installed in the following areas:*

- 1. Restrooms*
- 2. Corridors*
- 3. Music practice rooms*
- 4. Band rooms*
- 5. Gymnasiums*
- 6. Multipurpose rooms*
- 7. Occupational shops*

8. *Occupied rooms where ambient noise impairs hearing of the fire alarm*
9. *Lobbies*
10. *Meeting rooms*
11. *Any other area for common use*

**NOTE:** *This section is also adopted by the Division of the State Architect, Access Compliance, for buildings not regulated by the state fire marshal.*

**Amend Sections 6-3.2.1 and 6-3.3.1 as follows:.**

**Sec. 6-3.2.1** *Audible signal appliances intended for operation in the public mode shall have a sound level of not less than 75dBA at 10 feet (3048 mm) or more than 110dBA at the minimum hearing distance from the audible appliance.*

**Sec. 6-3.3.1 PRIVATE MODE** *Audible signals intended for operation in the private mode shall have a sound level of not less than 45dBA at 10 feet (3048 mm) or more than 110dBA at the minimum hearing distance from the audible appliance.*

**Add a Section 3-8.2.3 (a) as follows:**

**Sec. 3-8.2.3 (a)** *A smoke detector continuously subjected to a smoke concentration above alarm threshold magnitude initiates a system alarm within 30 seconds.*

**Add a Section 3-8.13.3.1 as follows:**

**Sec. 3-8.13.3.1. Secondary Power Supply.** *In calculating the size of the secondary power supply, the total system supervisory and alarm loads shall be used.*

**Amend Section 3-8.13.5.1 as follows:**

**Sec. 3-8.13.5.1 Operation.**

*No audible device timeout of fire alarm signals shall be allowed.*

**Add a Section 3-12.4.3 and amend as follows:**

**Sec. 3-12.4.3 (c) 3.** *Installation of listed circuit integrity (C.I.) cable, which meets or exceeds a two-hour fire-resistance rating.*

***Amend existing Section 3-12.6.3.1 (a) as follows:***

***Sec. 3-12.6.3.1 (a).***

*(a) An alert tone for Group R, Division 1 Occupancies shall be a minimum of 30 seconds, all others shall have an alert tone of 3 to 10 seconds' duration... (Balance to remain unchanged.)*

***Add to Section 3-12.6.5.1 as follows:***

***Sec. 3-12.6.5.1.*** *Special fire alarm provisions for occupancies having floors used for human occupancy located more than 75 feet (22 860 mm) above the lowest level of the fire department vehicle access, are found in Title 24, Part 2, Chapter 4, of the California Building Code. Those provisions include providing a central control station. The requirements provided for, in a fire command center, may be included within the central control station.*

***Amend existing Section 5-8.1.2 by adding an exception as follows:***

***Exception:*** *When individual units are served by a single stairway, additional boxes at other than the ground floor may be omitted.*

# **PART 3**

## **THE CALIFORNIA ELECTRICAL CODE**

## ARTICLE 089 – ADMINISTRATION

(Note: Article 089 has no corresponding Article in the NEC.)

**089-1. Title.** *The provisions contained in this Code shall be known as the “California Electrical Code,” a portion of the “California Building Standards Code,” as defined in the “California Building Standards Law” commencing with Section 18901 of the Health and Safety Code, and may be cited and referred to as the “California Electrical Code.” The unqualified words “This Code” as used herein refer only to the California Electrical Code, and do not include any other portions of the California Building Standards Code. These provisions may also be cited as “C.E.C.” or “Part 3” within other parts of the California Building Standards Code (Title 24).*

**089-2. Purpose.** *The purpose of this Code is to provide minimum standards to safeguard life or limb, health, property and public welfare, and to protect against hazards that may arise from the use of electricity by regulating and controlling the design, construction, installation, qualify of materials, location and operation of electrical equipment, wiring and systems.*

**089-3. Scope.** *The purpose of the Code and the building standards contained herein including those standards adopted by reference without amendments, where specifically adopted by the listed agencies under their cited authority and enforced by the enforcing agency specified in Section 089-7, shall apply to the construction, alteration, moving, demolition, repair and use of all electrical equipment wiring and systems in or on any building or structure or outdoors on any premise or property; except such electrical equipment, wiring and systems which are expressly exempted by Section 089-4.*

**089-4. Exempted from this Code.** *This Code does not cover:*

(a) *Installations in ships, watercraft other than floating dwelling units, railway rolling stock, aircraft, automotive vehicles, commercial coaches, mobile-homes and recreational vehicles.*

(b) *Installations underground in mines, mine shafts and tunnels.*

(c) *Installations of railways for generation, transformation, transmission, or distribution of power used exclusively for operation of rolling stock or installations used exclusively for signaling and communication purposes.*

(d) *Installation of communication equipment under the exclusive control of communication utilities, located outdoors or in building spaces used exclusively for such installations.*

(e) *Installations under the exclusive control of electrical utilities for the purpose of communication, or metering; or for the generation, control, transformation, transmission, and distribution of electrical energy located in buildings used exclusively by utilities for such purposes or located outdoors on property owned or leased by the utility or on public highways, streets, roads, etc., or outdoors by established rights on private property.*

*Exception to (d) and (e): In places of employment, the following shall apply: installations of conductors, equipment and associated enclosures subject to the jurisdiction of the California Public Utilities Commission, that are owned, operated and maintained by an electric, communications, or electric railway utility, but not including conduits, vaults, and other like enclosures containing conductors and equipment of such a utility when located indoors or on premises not used exclusively for utility purposes, but do not apply to the utility's conductors and equipment therein.*

(f) *Installations on highways or bridges.*

#### **089-5. Non-Building Standards, Orders and Regulations.**

(a) *Requirements contained in the National Electrical Code (NEC), or in any other referenced code, document or standard, which are not building standards as defined in Section 18912 of the Health and Safety Code, shall not be construed as a part of the provisions of this Code.*

(b) *For the applicability of regulations, safety and other orders, and standards which relate to the administration, enforcement, maintenance, operation and similar non-building standards, see other titles of the California Code of Regulations.*

#### **089-6. Order of Precedence and Use.**

(a) *In the event of any difference between the provisions of this Code and the National Electrical Code (NEC), or between this Code and the provisions of any other referenced code, document or standard, the text of this Code shall govern. Where a specific provision varies from a general provision, the specific provisions shall apply.*

(b) *If a section of this Code makes a cross-reference to another section or table in the National Electrical Code (NEC), such cross-referencing shall be interpreted to mean that which is shown in the NEC unless the referenced section or table has been amended or modified in this Code for the particular enforcing agency.*

(c) *If a section in the National Electrical Code (NEC) makes a cross-reference to another section or table in the NEC, such cross-referencing shall be interpreted to mean that which is shown in the NEC unless the referenced section or table has been amended or modified in this Code or the particular enforcing agency.*



(d) *When adopted by a State agency, and approved by the Commission, the text of amended provisions contained in this Code shall take precedence over the corresponding provisions of the National Electrical Code (NEC).*

## **089-7. Application.**

### **1. BSC-California Building Standards Commission.**

**Application-***State Buildings including buildings constructed by the Trustees of the California State University and Colleges and the Regents of the University of California where no state agency has the authority to adopt Building Standards applicable to such buildings.*

**Enforcing Agency-***State or Local agency specified by the applicable provisions of law.*

**Authority Cited-***Health and Safety Code Section 18934.5.*

**Reference-***Health and Safety Code Sections 18901 through 18949.6.*

### **2. DHS-Department of Health Services.**

**Application (1)-***Section 210-50(d) applies to commissaries serving mobile food preparation units.*

**(2)** *Sections 680-13 and 680-14 apply to public swimming pools.*

**Enforcing Agency-***The Department of Health Services or the local health officer.*

**Authority Cited-***Health and Safety Code Sections 102, 208, 18897.2, 24102 and 27502.*

**Reference-***Health and Safety Code Sections 102, 208, 18897.2, 24102 and 27991.*

### **3. HCD-1-Department of Housing and Community Development.**

**Application-***Hotels, motels, lodging houses, apartment houses, dwellings, employee housing, and factory-built housing. Access and adaptability requirements for the physically disabled shall apply to all newly constructed privately funded covered multi-family dwelling units in buildings having three or more dwelling units and privately funded shelters intended for occupancy as residences for homeless persons. These regulations do not apply to buildings containing less than four condominium dwelling units. These regulations also do not apply to the repair, rehabilitation or additions to apartment houses, condominiums or time-share units.*

**Enforcing Agency-***Local Building Department or the Department of Housing and Community Development.*

**Authority Cited-***Health and Safety Code Sections 17921 and 50558.*

**Reference-***Health and Safety Code Sections 17000 through 17060, 17910 through 17990, 50558 and 50559.*

### **4. HCD-2-Department of Housing and Community Development.**

**Application-***Permanent buildings in mobile home parks, recreational vehicle parks, temporary recreational parks, and travel trailer parks.*

**Enforcing Agency-***Local building department or the Department of Housing and Community Development.*

**Authority Cited-***Health and Safety Code Section 18300.*

**Reference-***Health and Safety Code Sections 18200 through 18851.*

## **5. DSA/AC-Division of the State Architect, Access Compliance.**

**General.** *To assure that barrier-free design is incorporated in all buildings, facilities, site work and other improvements to which this code applies; to assure that these improvements are accessible to and usable by physically disabled persons. Additions, alterations and structural repairs in all buildings and facilities shall comply with these provisions for new buildings, except as otherwise provided and specified here. The provisions of these regulations shall apply to any portable buildings leased or owned by a school district, and shall also apply to temporary and emergency buildings and facilities.*

**A. Application-***Publicly-Funded Buildings, Structures, Sidewalks, Curbs and Related Facilities where access for people with physical disabilities is required to areas designated in Part 2 of Title 24.*

**Note:** *See Government Code, commencing with Section 4450.*

**(1)** *All buildings, structures, sidewalks, curbs, and related facilities constructed by the use of State, county, or municipal funds, or the funds of any political subdivision of the State.*

**(2)** *All buildings, structures, and facilities, occupied 50 percent or more, which are leased, rented, contracted, sublet or hired for periods in excess of two years by any municipal county or State division of government or by a special district. The determination as to whether the building, structure, or facility is occupied 50 percent or more shall be based upon the usable floor areas as defined in Part 2 of this code.*

**(3)** *All publicly-funded living accommodations*

**(4)** *All publicly-funded buildings used for one or two family dwelling unit purposes shall conform to the appropriate provisions applicable to living accommodations.*

**(5)** *All existing publicly-funded buildings and facilities when alterations, structural repairs or additions are made to such buildings or facilities. This requirement shall apply only to the area of specific alteration, structural repair or addition and shall include those areas listed below:*

**a.** *A primary entrance to the building or facility and the primary path of travel to the specific area of alteration, structural repair or addition.*

**b.** *Sanitary facilities, drinking fountains, and public telephones serving the area.*

**Exception No. 1:** *When the total construction cost of alterations, structural repairs or additions does not exceed a valuation threshold of \$50,000, based on January 1981, “ENR US-20 Cities” average construction cost index of 3372.02 (“Engineering News Record”, McGraw-Hill Publishing Co.), and the enforcing agency finds that compliance with this Code creates an unreasonable hardship compliance shall be limited to the actual work of the project.*

*The enforcing agency shall, annually, update the valuation threshold to a current amount based on the increase in the index since the last figure used.*

**Exception No. 2:** *Alterations, structural repairs or additions consisting of one of the flooring shall be limited to the actual work of the project:*

- a.** *Altering one building entrance to meet handicapped/physically disabled requirements.*
- b.** *Altering one existing toilet facility to meet handicapped/physically disabled requirements.*
- c.** *Altering existing elevators to meet handicapped/physically disabled requirements.*
- d.** *Altering existing steps to meet handicapped/physically disabled requirements.*
- e.** *Altering existing handrails to meet handicapped/physically disabled requirements.*

**Exception No. 3:** *Projects which consist only of heating, ventilation, air conditioning, reroofing, electrical work not involving placement of switches and receptacles, cosmetic work that does not affect access such as painting, carpeting, etc., are not considered alteration projects for purposes of accessibility for the handicapped/people with physical disabilities and shall not be subject to DSA/AC requirements.*

**B. Application.** *Privately-Funded Public Accommodations and Facilities where access for people with physical disabilities is required to areas designated in Part 2 or Title 24.*

**Note:** *See Health and Safety Code, commencing with Section 19952.*

(1) *Any building, structure, facility, complex or improved area or portion thereof which is used by the general public and shall include:*

**a.** *Auditoriums, convention centers and stadiums.*

**b.** *Hospitals, including but not limited to, hospitals, nursing homes*

**c.** *Theaters, restaurants and shopping centers.*

**d.** *Hotels and motels.*

**e.** *Passenger vehicle service stations.*

**f.** *Offices of physicians and surgeons.*

**g.** *Office buildings.*

**h.** *Public curbs and sidewalks.*

(2) *Any sanitary facilities which are made available for the public, clients, or employees in such accommodations or facilities.*

(3) *Any curb or sidewalk intended for public use that is constructed in this State with private funds.*

(4) *All existing privately-funded public accommodations when alterations, structural repairs or additions are made to such public accommodations as set forth under 11A(5) above.*

**Exception No. 1:** *In privately funded multi-storied passenger vehicle service stations, shopping centers, offices of physicians and surgeons, and office buildings, subject to this code, floors or levels above and below the first floor or ground level are exempt from these requirements if a ramp or elevator is not available to provide public access to such floors or levels.*

**Exception No. 2:** *In privately funded multi-storied buildings, floors or levels above the first floor or ground level are exempt from these requirements if a reasonable portion of all facilities and accommodations normally sought and used by the public in such a building are accessible to and usable by physically handicapped persons/people with physical disabilities.*

**C. Enforcing Agency:**

(1) *By the Director of General services where State funds are utilized for any project or where funds of counties, municipalities other political subdivisions are utilized for the construction of elementary, secondary or community college projects.*

(2) *By the governing bodies thereof where funds of counties, municipalities or other political subdivision are utilized except as otherwise provided above.*

(3) *By the building department of every city, county, or city and county within the territorial area of its city, county, or city and county where private funds are utilized. "Building department" means the department, bureau, or officer charged with the enforcement of laws or ordinances regulating the erection or construction, or both the erection and construction of buildings.*

**D. Special Conditions for the Physically Handicapped Requiring Appeals Action**  
**Ratification:** *Whenever reference is made in these regulations to this section, the findings and determinations required to be rendered by the local enforcing agency shall be subject to ratification through an appeals process.*

**E. Authority Cited-Government Code Section 4450.**

**F. Reference-Government Code Sections 4450 through 4458 and Health and Safety Code Sections 19952 through 19959.**

**6. DSA-SSS-Structural Safety Section, Division of the State Architect.**

**A. Application-Public elementary and secondary school and community-college buildings.**

**B. Application-State owned or leased essential service buildings.**

**Enforcing Agency-Structural Safety Section, Office of the State Architect.**

**Authority Cited-Health and Safety Code Section 16022.**

**7. OSHPD-Office of Statewide Health Planning and Development.**

**A. OSHPD 1**

**Application-General acute-care hospitals and acute psychiatric hospitals. For Structural Regulations:** *Skilled nursing facilities and/or intermediate care facilities except those skilled nursing facilities and intermediate care facilities of single-story, Type V, wood or light steel-frame construction enforcing Agency.*

**OSHPD-The office shall enforce the Division of the State Architect access compliance regulations and the regulations of the Office of the State Fire Marshal for the above stated facility types.**

**Authority Cited-H&SC §446.2, 446.3, 11275 AND 15055.**

**Reference-H&SC §446.2, 446.3, 1275 AND 15000 through 15093, H&SC §19958 and H&SC §15001.**

**‘ B. OSHPD 2**

**Application-***Skilled nursing facilities and intermediate care facilities. For structural regulations: Single-story, Type V skilled nursing and/or intermediate-care facilities utilizing wood or light steel-frame construction.*

**Enforcing Agency-***OSHPD. The office shall also enforce the Division of the State Architect access compliance regulations and the regulations of the Office of the State Fire Marshal for the above stated facility type.*

**Authority Cited-***H&SC §446.2, 446.3, 1275 AND 15005.*

**Reference-***H&SC §446.2, 446.3, 1275 AND 15001.*

### **C. OSHPD 3**

**Application-***Clinics.*

**Enforcing Agency-***Local building department.*

**Authority Cited -***H&SC §446.2, 446.3, and 1226, GC §54350, H&SC §15071.1 and State Constitution Article 11 §7.*

### **D. OSHPD 4**

**Application-***Correctional treatment centers.*

**Enforcing Agency-***OSHPD. The office shall also enforce the Division of the State Architect access compliance regulations and the regulations of the Office of the State Fire Marshal for the above-stated facility types.*

**Authority Cited-***H&SC Sections 446.2, 446.3 and 1226.*

**Reference-***H&SC Sections 446.2, 446.3, 1275 and 15000 through 15093.*

### **8. SFM-Office of the State Fire Marshal.**

**Application-***All high-rise buildings; assembly, educational and institutional buildings; all other occupancies when auxiliary or accessory to an assembly, educational or institutional building; organize camps and State-owned or occupied buildings including State colleges and universities; tents, awnings or other fabric enclosures used in connection with any occupancy.*

**Enforcing Agency-***Local fire authority. State Fire Marshal where no local fire authority exists and for State-owned or occupied buildings.*

**Authority Cited-***Health and Safety Code Sections 13108, 13116, 13143, 13143.6, 13211, and 18897.3.*

**Reference-***Health and Safety Code Sections 13100 through 13146.5, 13210 through 13216 and 18897 through 18897.7.*

**089.8 Adopting Agency.** *An “Adopting agency” is a State agency, excluding an agency in the judicial or legislative departments of the State Government, which is responsible for the administration of a program and which as promulgated, adopted and submitted to the Commission for its approval proposed building standards for such programs. “Adopting agency” may include boards, commissions, committees, departments, divisions, officers, offices, and other subdivisions of State Government.*

**089-9. Format.** *The California Electrical Code, a part of the California Building Standards Code, adopts the National Electrical Code (NEC) by reference on an article by article basis. Amendments or additions to the provisions of the NEC by each adopting agency are adopted on a section by section or subsection by subsection basis, and follow the NEC format using the same titles, bold face headings and general text arrangement, except where the Commission has approved a format variance.*

**089-10. Validity.** *If any chapter, article, section, subsection, paragraph, sentence, clause, or phrase of this Code is for any reason held to be unconstitutional, contrary to statute, exceeding the authority of the State as stipulated by statutes, or otherwise inoperative such decisions shall not affect the validity of the remaining portions of this Code.*

**089-11. Standard Reference Documents.**

(a) *The codes, publications and standards adopted in the Matrix Adoption or referred to in the text of this Code, including other codes, publications and standards referred to therein, are by title and date of publication, hereby adopted as standard reference documents of this Code.*

(b) *Such reference to other documents shall be made in the form of either an internal citation within the text or a fine print note (utilizing a smaller typographical alphabet letter size), and shall be a specific edition of the reference document. Internal citations appearing within the text of a building standard are enforceable, and each citation must be checked for accuracy and application. Fine print notes which appear beneath the applicable text of the building standard or Code section are explanatory or permissive and are not enforceable.*

## ARTICLE 210 - BRANCH CIRCUITS

### A. General Provisions

#### 210-7. Receptacles and Cord Connectors.

(g) *[For HCD 1] Installation Height.* **Installation Height.** *Where access for people with physical disabilities is required by Article 089-7, the center of receptacle outlets on branch circuits of 30 amperes or less shall be installed not less than 15 inches above the floor or working platform.*

*EXCEPTION NO. 1: Receptacle outlets installed as a part of permanently installed baseboard heaters are exempt.*

*EXCEPTION NO. 2: Required receptacle outlets shall be permitted in floors when adjacent to sliding panels or walls.*

*EXCEPTION NO. 3: Baseboard electrical outlets used in relocatable partitions, window walls or other electrical convenience floor outlets are not subject to the minimum height requirements.*

*EXCEPTION NO. 4: This section shall not apply to existing buildings when the enforcing agency determines that compliance with these standards would create an unreasonable hardship.*

**210-7(g.1): This code section was inadvertently dropped from the matrix table. It will be added shortly.**

### **C. Required Outlets**

#### **210-50**

**(d) [For DHS] Commissary Service Outlet.** *A commissary which services food preparation units shall provide one outlet for each vehicle requiring electrical power for mechanical refrigeration.*

**(e) [For DHS with exceptions] Installation Height.** *The center of 15-, 20-, and 30-ampere receptacle outlets required by Sections 210-52(a), (b), and (c) shall be installed not less than 12 inches above the floor or working platform.*

*EXCEPTION NO. 1: Receptacle outlets installed as a part of permanently installed baseboard heaters are exempt.*

*EXCEPTION NO. 2: Required receptacle outlets shall be permitted in floors when adjacent to sliding panels or walls.*

*EXCEPTION NO. 3: Baseboard electrical outlets used in relocatable partitions, window walls or other electrical convenience floor outlets are not subject to the minimum height requirements.*



## ARTICLE 380 - SWITCHES

### Sec. 380-8 Accessibility and Grouping.

**380-8(c).** *[For HCD1, DSA/AC] Installation. The center of the grip of the operating handle of controls or switches intended to be used by the occupant of the room or area to control lighting and receptacle outlets, appliances, or cooling, heating and ventilating equipment, shall be not more than 48 inches (1219 mm) above the floor or working platform.*

## ARTICLE 346 – RIGID METAL CONDUIT

This code section is erroneously shown as adopted in the 1998 California Electrical Code. It will be removed by errata shortly by Building Standards Commission.

## ARTICLE 540 – MOTION PICTURE PROJECTIONS

This code section is erroneously shown as adopted in the 1998 California Electrical Code. It will be removed by errata shortly by Building Standards Commission.

## ARTICLE 710 – OVER 600 VOLTS, NOMINAL GENERAL

This code section is erroneously shown as adopted in the 1998 California Electrical Code. It will be removed by errata shortly by Building Standards Commission.

## ARTICLE 760 – FIRE PROTECTIVE SIGNALING SYSTEMS

### **760-16** *[For DSA/AC] Installation Height of Manual Stations.*

*The center of fire alarm initiating devices (boxes) shall be located 48 inches above the level of the floor, working platform, ground surface or sidewalk.*

*Exception: Enforcement official shall not retroactively require fire alarm initiating devices be relocated to a 48-inch height.*

# **PART 5**

## **THE CALIFORNIA PLUMBING CODE**

## Chapter 1 ADMINISTRATION

### SECTION 101.2 – Purpose

**101.2.2** *To provide minimum standards to safeguard life or limb, health, property and public welfare, and protect against hazards that may arise from the use of plumbing piping and systems by regulating and controlling the design, construction, installation, quality of materials, location and operation of plumbing piping systems within the state of California.*

### SECTION 101.4 – Scope

**101.4.1 Application.** *The provisions of this code shall apply to the construction, alteration, moving, demolition, repair and use of all plumbing, gas, or drainage piping and systems or water heating or treating equipment in or on any building or structure or outdoors on any premises or property.*

**101.4.1.1.1** *Any plumbing system may have its existing use, maintenance or repair continued when the administrative authority determines that its use, maintenance or repair is in accordance with the original design and no hazard to the public health, safety or welfare has been created by such system.*

**101.4.1.1.2.a** *Existing building sewer and building drains may be used in connection with plumbing alterations or repairs if such sewer or drains have been properly maintained and were installed in accordance with the applicable laws in effect at the time of installation. Any plumbing system existing on January 1, 1975, shall be deemed to have conformed to applicable law in effect at the time of installation and to have been maintained in good condition if currently in good and safe condition and working properly.*

**101.4.1.1.3.1 [For HCD 1 &2, DSA/AC]** *Effective January 1, 1990, in new construction and those existing facilities which occupancy type are listed in Tables 4-1 and 4-4 for public use, which apply for permit to undertake construction, structural alterations, repairs or improvement which exceed 50 percent of the square footage of the entire facility, shall install water closets, urinals, lavatories and drinking fountains as stipulated in Tables 4-1 and 4-4 for public use.*

*Community and/or municipal parks with a bleacher capacity not exceeding 500 seats shall be exempt from the requirements of this section and Tables 4-1 and 4-4.*

**Note:** *Each bathroom shall comply with Chapter 15 of the California Plumbing Code.*

**101.4.1.4a Conflicts Between Codes.** *When the requirements of this code conflict with the requirements of the California Mechanical Code, Title 24, Part 4, the California Mechanical Code shall prevail.*

**101.4.4 Effective Date.** *One hundred and eighty days after the date of publication, or as otherwise noted herein.*

**101.4.4.1** *For clarification purposes, the application subsection of Health and Safety Code Section 18938 is repeated.*

*H&SC 18938. (b) The building standards contained in the Uniform Fire Code of the International Conference of Building Officials and the Western Fire Chiefs Association, Inc, the Uniform Building Code of the International Conference of Building Officials, Appendix Chapter 1 of the Uniform Code for Building Conservation of the International Conference of Building Officials, the Uniform Plumbing Code of the International Association of Plumbing and Mechanical Officials, the National Electrical Code of the National Fire Protection Association, the Uniform Mechanical Code of the International Conference of Building Officials and the International Association of Plumbing and Mechanical Officials, as referenced in the California Building Standards Code, shall apply to all occupancies throughout the state and shall become effective 180 days after publication in the California Building Standards Code by the California Building Standards Commission, or at a later date after publication established by the commission.*

**101.4.4.2** *The provisions of the model code which are adopted by these regulations are applicable to all occupancies groups and uses regulated by this code. The amendments to the model code are applicable only to those occupancies or uses which the state agency adopting the amendments is authorized to regulate as listed in Section 101.8*

## **101.6 Nonbuilding Regulations**

*Requirements contained in the U.P.C., or in any other referenced standard, code, or document, which are not building standards as defined in Section 18909, Health and Safety Code, shall not be construed as part of the provisions of this code.*

## **101.7 Order of Precedence**

*Where, in any specific cases, different sections of this code specify different materials, methods of construction or other requirements, the most restrictive shall govern. When there is a conflict between a general and a specific requirement, the specific requirements shall apply.*

### **101.8 Format**

*This part fundamentally adopts the U.P.C. by reference on a chapter-by-chapter basis. Such adoption is reflected in the adoption tables of each chapter of this part. When the adoption table of a chapter of this part makes no reference to a specific chapter of the U.P.C., such chapter of the U.P.C. is not adopted as a portion of this code.*

### **101.9 Validity**

*If any chapter, section, subsection, sentence, clause or phrase of this code is for any reason held to be unconstitutional, contrary to statute, exceeding the authority of the state as stipulated by statutes, or otherwise inoperative, such decision shall not affect the validity of the remaining portion of this code.*

### **101.10 Standard Reference Documents**

**101.10.1** *The codes, standards and publications, adopted and set forth in this code, including other codes, standards and publications referred to therein are, by title and date of publication, hereby adopted as standard reference documents of this code.*

**101.10.2** *When this code does not specifically cover any subject relating to building design and construction, recognized fire-prevention engineering practices shall be employed. The National Fire Codes and the Fire Protection Handbook of the National Fire Protection Association may be used as authoritative guides in determining recognized fire-prevention engineering practices.*

### **101.11 Application**

**101.11.1 Vesting Authority.** *When adopted by a state agency, the provisions of these regulations shall be enforced by the appropriate enforcing agency, but only to the extent of authority granted to such agency by the state legislature.*

*Following is a list of the state agencies that adopt building standards, specific scope of application of the agency responsible for enforcement, and the specific authority of each agency to adopt and enforce such provisions of building standards of this code, unless otherwise stated.*

## Chapter 15

# PLUMBING REQUIREMENTS FOR DESIGN SAFETY FOR ACCESSIBILITY

### 1501.0 [For DSA/AC w/ exceptions, HCD 1/AC & 2 w/o exceptions]

#### General

*This chapter contains building standards of the Division of the State Architect/Access Compliance and the Department of Housing and Community Development applicable to all buildings and facilities required to be accessible to and usable by persons with disabilities.*

**EXCEPTIONS:** 1. *{For DSA/AC} In existing buildings, when the enforcing agency determines that compliance with any regulation under this chapter would create an unreasonable hardship, an exception shall be granted when equivalent facilitation is provided.*

2. *{For DSA/AC} In existing buildings, when the enforcing agency determines because of physical constraints compliance with this chapter or equivalent facilitation would create an unreasonable hardship, these regulations shall not apply.*

### 1502.0 [For DSA/AC w/ notes, HCD 2 w/o notes] Water Closets

*The height of accessible water closets shall be a minimum of 17 inches (432 mm) and a maximum of 19 inches (483 mm) measured to the top of a maximum 2-inch-high (51 mm) toilet seat, except that 3-inch (76 mm) seats shall be permitted only in alterations where the existing fixture is less than 15 inches (381 mm) high, Controls shall be operable with one hand, and shall not require tight grasping, pinching or twisting. Controls for the flush valves shall be mounted on the wide side of toilet areas, no more than 44 inches (1118 mm) above the floor. The force required to activate controls shall be no greater than 5 pound force (lbf) (22.2 N).*

**NOTES:** 1. *{For DSA/AC} See the California Building Code, Chapter 11A, for water closets in living accommodations.*

2. *{For DSA/AC} See California Building Code, Chapter 11B, for additional requirements for water closets in publicly funded housing and all nonresidential occupancies.*

3. *{For DSA/AC} Automatic "spring to lifted position" seats are not allowed.*

### **1503.0 [For HCD 2] Urinals**

#### **1503.1 [For HCD 2] Permanent Buildings and Accessory Buildings in Mobile Home Parks and Special Occupancy Parks**

*1503.1.1 Where one or more urinals are provided, at least one with a rim projecting a minimum of 14 inches (356 mm) from the wall and at a maximum of 17 inches (432 mm) above the floor shall be provided.*

*1503.1.2 Flush controls shall be operable with one hand and shall not require tight grasping, pinching or twisting of the wrist and shall be mounted no more than 44 inches (1118 mm) above the floor. The force required to activate controls shall be no greater than 5 lbf (22.2 N).*

#### **1503.2 [For HCD 2, DSA/AC] Publicly Funded Buildings, Public Accommodations, Commercial Buildings and Publicly Funded Housing**

*1503.2.1 Urinals shall be floor mounted or wall hung. Where one or more wall hung urinals are provided, at least one with a rim projecting a minimum of 14 inches (356 mm) from the wall and at a maximum of 17 inches (432 mm) above the floor shall be provided.*

*1503.2.2 Flush controls shall be operable with one hand and shall not require tight grasping, pinching or twisting of the wrist and shall be mounted no more than 44 inches (1118 mm) above the floor. The force required to activate controls shall be no greater than 5 lbf (22.2 n). Electronic or automatic flushing controls are acceptable and preferable.*

### **1504.0 Lavatories**

#### **1504.1 Privately Funded Housing [for HCD 1/AC] and Permanent Buildings and Accessory Buildings in Mobile Home Parks and Special Occupancy Parks [for HCD 2 w/o exception]**

*1504.1.1 Lavatories adjacent to a wall shall be mounted with a minimum distance of 18 inches (457 mm) to the center line of the fixture. All accessible lavatories shall be mounted with the rim or counter surface no higher than 34 inches (864 mm) above the finish floor and with a clearance of at least 29 inches (737 mm) from the floor to the bottom of the apron with knee clearance under the front lip extending a minimum of 30 inches (762 mm) in width with 8 inches (203 mm) minimum depth at the top. The clearance shall be the same width and shall be a minimum of 9 inches (229 mm) high from the floor and a minimum of 17 inches (432 mm) deep from the front of the lavatory.*

**EXCEPTION: {For HCD 1/AC}** *In privately funded apartment houses, the space under the lavatory may be omitted provided the door swing does not encroach on clear spaces in front of the lavatory, water closet and bathtub-shower in the accessible bathroom.*

**1504.1.2** *Hot water and drain pipes accessible under lavatories shall be insulated or otherwise covered. There shall be no sharp or abrasive surfaces under lavatories.*

**1504.1.3** *Faucet controls and operating mechanisms shall be operable with one hand and shall not require tight grasping, pinching or twisting of the wrist.*

*The force required to activate controls shall be no greater than 5 lbf (22.2 N). Lever operated, push-type and electronically controlled mechanisms are examples of acceptable designs. Self-closing valves are allowed if the faucet remains open for at least 10 seconds.*

**1504.2 [For DSA/AC] Publicly Funded Buildings, Public Accommodations, Commercial Buildings and Publicly Funded Housing**

**1504.2.1** *Faucet controls and operating mechanisms shall be operable with one hand in accordance with Chapter 11B of the California Building Code and shall not require tight grasping, pinching or twisting of the wrist. The force required to activate controls shall be no greater than 5 lbf (22.2 N). Lever-operated, push-type and electronically controlled mechanisms (preferable) are examples of acceptable designs. Self-closing valves are allowed if the faucet remains open for at least 10 seconds.*

*Lavatories, when located adjacent to a side wall or partition, shall be a minimum of 18 inches (457 mm) to the center line of the fixture. All lavatories that are designated to be accessible shall be mounted with the rim or counter edge no higher than 34 inches (864 mm) above the finished floor and with vertical clearance measured from the bottom of the apron or the outside bottom edge of the lavatory of 29 inches (737 mm) reducing to 27 inches (686 mm) at a point located 8 inches (203 mm) back from the front edge.*

*Knee clearance below the lavatory shall extend a minimum of 30 inches (762 mm) in width by 17 inches (432 mm) in depth. See Figure 15-1.*

**1504.2.2** *Hot water and drain pipes accessible under lavatories shall be insulated or otherwise covered. There shall be no sharp or abrasive surfaces under lavatories.*

**Section 1505.0 [For DSA/AC w/note, HCD 2 w/o note] Showers**

**1505.1** *Water controls of a single-lever design shall be located on the side wall opposite the seat and operable with a maximum force of 5 lbf (22.2 N). The controls shall be located 40 inches (1016 mm) [plus or minus 1 inch (25 mm) tolerance] above the shower floor.*



**1505.2** *A flexible hand-held shower unit with a hose at least 60 inches (1524 mm) long shall be provided with head mounting height of 48 inches (1219 mm) [plus or minus 1 inch (25 mm) tolerance] maximum above the shower floor.*

**1505.3** *Where handicapped shower facilities are provided in areas subject to excessive vandalism, in lieu of providing the fixed flexible hose and hand-held shower head required above, two wall-mounted shower heads shall be installed. Each shower head shall be controlled so that it can be operated independently of the other and shall have a swivel angle adjustment, both vertically and horizontally. One shower head shall be located at a height of 40 inches (1016 mm) [plus or minus 1 inch (25 mm) tolerance] above the floor.*

**1505.4** *Where, within the same functional area, two or more showers are provided for the physically handicapped, there shall be at least one shower constructed opposite hand from the other or others (i.e., one left-hand controls versus right-hand controls).*

**NOTE:** {For DSA/AC} See the California Building Code, Chapter 11B, for showers in living accommodations.

### **Section 1506.0 [For DSA/AC, HCD 2 w/o note] Bathtubs**

*Bathtubs shall be provided with a shower spray unit having a hose at least 60 inches (1524 mm) long that can be used as a shower. Bathtub enclosures, if provided, shall not obstruct controls or transfer from wheelchair onto bathtub seats or into tubs. Enclosures on bathtubs shall not have tracks mounted on their rims.*

**NOTE:** {For DSA/AC} See the California Building Code, Chapter 11B, for bathtubs in living accommodations.

### **1507.0 Drinking Fountains**

#### **1507.1 [FOR HCD 1/AC] Privately Funded Housing**

**1507.1.1** *If provided in covered multifamily buildings, drinking fountains and water coolers shall be on an accessible route. Wall-mounted and post-mounted cantilevered drinking fountains and water coolers shall have a clear knee space a minimum of 30 inches (762 mm) in width and shall also have a minimum clear floor space 30 inches by 48 inches (762 mm by 1219 mm) to allow a person in a wheelchair to approach the unit facing forward.*

**1507.1.2** *The spout shall provide a flow of water at least 4 inches (102 mm) high so as to allow the insertion of a cup or glass under the flow of water. The force required to activated controls shall be no greater than 5 lbf (22.2 N).*

## **1507.2 [For HCD 2] Permanent Buildings in Mobile Home Parks and Special Occupancy Parks**

**1507.2.1** *The drinking fountain shall be a minimum of 18 inches (457 mm) in depth and there shall be clear and unobstructed knee space under the drinking fountain not less than 27 inches (686 mm) in height and 8 inches (203 mm) in depth, the depth measurements being taken from the front edge of the fountain. Additionally, there shall be toe clearance of 9 inches (229 mm) in height above the floor and 17 inches (432 mm) in depth from the front edge of the fountain. A side approach drinking fountain is not acceptable.*

## **1507.3 [For DSA/AC] Publicly Funded Buildings, Public Accommodations, Commercial Buildings and Publicly Funded Housing**

**1507.3.1** *The drinking fountain shall be a minimum of 18 inches (457 mm) in depth and there shall be clear and unobstructed knee space under the drinking fountain not less than 27 inches (686 mm) in height and 8 inches (203 mm) in depth, the depth measurements being taken from the front edge of the fountain. Additionally, there shall be toe clearance of 9 inches (229 mm) in height above the floor and 17 inches (432 mm) in depth from the front edge of the fountain. A side approach drinking fountain is not acceptable.*

**1507.3.2** *If provided in covered multifamily buildings, drinking fountains and water coolers shall be on an accessible route. Wall-mounted and post-mounted cantilevered drinking fountains and water coolers shall have a clear knee space a minimum of 30 inches (762 mm) in width and shall also have a minimum clear floor space 30 inches by 48 inches (762 mm by 1219 mm) to allow a person in a wheelchair to approach the unit facing forward.*

**1507.3.3** *The bubbler shall be activated by a manually operated system not requiring a force greater than 5 lbf (22.2 N) that is located within 6 inches (152 mm) of the front edge of the fountain or an electronically controlled device (preferably). The bubbler outlet orifice shall be located within 6 inches (152 mm) of the front edge of the drinking fountain and within 36 inches (914 mm) of the floor. The water stream from the bubbler shall be substantially parallel to the front edge of the drinking fountain.*

**1507.3.4** *The spout shall provide a flow of water at least 4 inches (102 mm) high so as to allow the insertion of a cup or glass under the flow of water. The force required to activate controls shall be no greater than 5 lbf (22.2 N).*

## **1508.0 Sinks**

**1508.1 [DSA/AC, HCD 1/AC] Kitchen Sinks.** *Faucet controls and operating mechanisms shall be operable with one hand and shall not require tight grasping, pinching or twisting of the wrist. The force required to activate controls shall be no greater than 5 lbf (22.2 N). Lever-operated, push-type and electronically controlled mechanisms are examples of acceptable designs. Self-closing valves are allowed if the faucet remains open for at least 10 seconds.*

**1508.2 [DSA/AC] Noncommercial Kitchen and Counter Bar Sinks.** *Kitchen and counter bar sinks located in common use areas shall have faucet controls and operating mechanisms operable with one hand in accordance with Chapter 11B of the California Building Code and shall not require grasping, pinching or twisting of the wrist. The force required to activate controls shall be no greater than 5 lbf (22.2 N). Lever-operated, push-type and electronically controlled mechanisms are examples of acceptable designs. Self-closing valves are allowed if the faucet remains open for at least 10 seconds.*

**NOTE:** *See the California Building Code, Chapter 11B.*

[For purposes of using the table in the following page, the statute below limits the application to only certain occupancies in the table:

**ENVIRONMENTAL HEALTH, DIV. 104, § 118505**

- (d) This section shall apply to facilities where the public congregates that commence construction, or that undertake structural alterations, repairs, or improvements exceeding 50 percent of the entire facility, on or after January 1, 1989.
- (e) For the purposes of this section, “facilities where the public congregates: means sports and entertainment arenas, stadiums, community and convention halls, specialty event centers, amusement facilities, and ski resorts.  
For purposes of this section, “facilities where the public congregates” also means specialty event centers in public parks.
- (f) This section shall not apply to the following:
  - (1) Any hotel. For purposes of this section, “hotel” means an establishment in which there exists the relationship of guests and innkeeper between the occupants and the owner or operator of the establishment. The existence of some other legal relationship between the occupants and owner or operator shall be immaterial.
  - (2) Any restaurant or food facility, as defined in Section 113785.
  - (3) Any public or private elementary or secondary school facility.
  - (4) Any qualified historic building, defined as qualifying under provisions in the State Historical Building Code contained in Part 8 (commencing with Section 8-100) of Title 24 of the California Code of Regulations.]

**TABLE 4-1: MINIMUM PLUMBING FACILITIES**

Each building shall be provided with sanitary facilities, including provisions for the physically handicapped as prescribed by the Department having jurisdiction. For requirements for the handicapped, ANSI A 117 1-1992, Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities may be used.

**Note:** ANSI A117 1-1992 is not adopted by the State of CALIFORNIA.

Each building shall be provided with sanitary facilities, including provisions for (HCD 1 & 2) persons with disabilities as prescribed by the Department having jurisdiction. [HCD 1] Covered multi-family dwellings minimum plumbing facilities required to be accessible to person with disabilities shall be provided in accordance with Chapter 15 of this Code and California Code of REGULATIONS, Title 24, Part 2, Chapter 11A [HCD 2]. Permanent mobile home park buildings and special occupancy park buildings required to be accessible by person with disabilities, shall be provided in accordance with Chapter 15 of this code and California Code of Regulations, Title 2, Part 2, Chapter 11B.

The total occupant load shall be determined by minimum exiting requirements. The minimum number of fixtures shall be calculated at fifty (50) percent male and fifty (50) percent female based on the total occupant load.

**Exception for HCD 1:** Minimum Plumbing Facilities; Limited Density Owner-built RURAL Dwellings. For limited density owner-built rural dwellings sanitary facilities, design and number of facilities as required and approved by the local health official shall be provided to the dwelling sites. It shall not be required that such facilities be located within the dwelling.

Each building shall be provided with sanitary facilities, including provisions for accessibility to person with disabilities as prescribed by the Department having jurisdiction, in the absence of such requirements, this Appendix, which provides a guideline for the minimum facilities for the various types of occupancies may be used.

The total occupant load shall be determined by minimum existing requirements. The minimum number of fixtures shall be calculated at fifty (50) percent male and fifty (50) percent female, based on the total occupant load.

Type of Building or Occupancy <sup>2</sup>	Water Closets <sup>14</sup> (Fixtures per Person)	Urinals <sup>5, 10</sup> (Fixtures per Person)	Lavatories (Fixtures per Person)	Bathtubs or Showers (Fixtures per Person)	Drinking Fountains <sup>3, 13</sup> (Fixtures per Person)
Assembly Places - Theatres, Auditoriums, Convention Halls, etc. - for permanent employee use	Male                  Female <sup>14</sup> 1: 1-15                  1: 1-15 2: 16-35                  3: 16-35 3: 36-55                  4: 36-55 Over 55, add 1 fixture for each additional 40 persons.	Male 0: 1-9 1: 10-50  Add one fixture for each additional 50 males	Male                  Female 1 per 40                  1 per 40		
Assembly Places - Theatres, Auditoriums, Convention Halls, etc - for public use	Male                  Female <sup>14</sup> 1:1-100                  3:1-50 2:101-200                  4:51-100 3:201-400                  8:101-200 11:201-400 Over 400, add 1 fixture for each additional 500 males and one for each additional 125 females	1:1-100 2:101-200 3:201-400 4:401-600 Over 600 add 1 fixture for each additional 300 males	Male                  Female 1:1-200                  1:1-200 2:201-400                  2:201-400 3:401-750                  3:401-750 Over 750, add one fixture for each additional 500 persons		1: 1 – 150 2: 151 – 400 3: 401 – 750  Over 750, add one fixture for each additional 500 persons

Type of Building or Occupancy <sup>2</sup>	Water Closets (Fixtures per Person)	Urinals <sup>10</sup> (Fixtures per Person)	Lavatories (Fixtures per Person)	Bathtubs or Showers (Fixtures per Person)	Drinking Fountains <sup>3,13</sup> (Fixtures per Person)
Dormitories <sup>9</sup> School or Labor	Male                      Female <sup>14</sup> 1 per 10                      1 per 8 Add 1 fixture for each additional 25 males (over 10) and 1 for each additional 20 females (over 8)	Male 1 per 25 Over 150, add 1 fixture for each additional 50 males	Male                      Female 1 per 12                      1 per 12 Over 12 add one fixture for each additional 20 males and 1 for each 15 additional females	1 per 8 For females, add 1 bathtub per 30. Over 150, add 1 per 20	1 per 150 <sup>12</sup>
Dormitories for staff use	Male                      Female <sup>14</sup> 1:1-15                      1:1-15 2:16-35                      3:16-36 3:36-55                      4:36-55 Over 55, add 1 fixture for each additional 40 persons	Male 1 per 50	Male                      Female 1 per 40                      1 per 40	1 per 8	
Dwellings <sup>4</sup> Single Dwelling Multiple Dwelling or Apartment House	1 per dwelling 1 per dwelling or apartment unit		1 per dwelling 1 per dwelling or apartment unit	1 per dwelling 1 per dwelling or apartment unit	
Hospital Waiting rooms	1 per room		1 per room		1 per 150 <sup>12</sup>
Hospital for employee use	Male                      Female <sup>14</sup> 1::15                      1:1-15 2:16-35                      3:16-35 3:36-55                      4:36-55 Over 55, add 1 fixture for each additional 40 persons	0:1-9 1:10-50  Add one fixture for each additional 50 males	Male                      Female 1 per 40                      1 per 40		
Hospitals Individual Room Ward Room	1 per room 1 per 8 patients		1 per room 1 per 10 patients	1 per room 1 per 20 patients	1 per 150 <sup>12</sup>
Industrial <sup>6</sup> Warehouses Workshops, Foundries and similar establishments (for employee use)	Male                      Female 1:1-10                      1:1-10 2:11-25                      2:11-25 3:26-50                      3:26-50 4:51-75                      4:51-75 5:76-100                      5:76-100 Over 100, add 1 fixture for each additional 30 persons		Up to 100, 1 per 10 persons  Over, 100, 1 per 15 persons <sup>7,8</sup>	1 shower for each 15 persons exposed to excessive heat or to skin contamination with poisonous, infectious, or irritating material	1 per 150 <sup>12</sup>

Type of Building or Occupancy <sup>2</sup>	Water Closets (Fixtures per Person)	Urinals <sup>10</sup> (Fixtures per Person)	Lavatories (Fixtures per Person)	Bathtubs or Showers (Fixtures per Person)	Drinking Fountains <sup>3,13</sup> (Fixtures per Person)
Institutional - Other than Hospitals or Penal Institutions (on each occupied floor)	Male 1 per 25 Female <sup>14</sup> 1 per 20	Male 0:1-9 1:10-50 Add one fixture for each additional 50 males	Male 1 per 10 Female 1 per 10	1 per 8	1 per 150 <sup>12</sup>
Institutional - Other than Hospitals or Penal Institutions (on each occupied floor) For employee use	Male 1:1-15 2:16-35 3:36-55 Over 55, add 1 fixture for each additional 40 persons Female <sup>14</sup> 1:1-15 3:16-35 4:36-55	Male 0:1-9 1:10-50 Add one fixture for each additional 50 males	Male 1 per 40 Female 1 per 40	1 per 8	1 per 150 <sup>12</sup>
Office or Public Buildings	Male 1:1-100 2:101-200 3:201-400 Over 400, add one fixture for each additional 500 males and one for each additional 150 females Female <sup>14</sup> 3:1-50 4:51-100 8:101-200 11:201-400	1:1-100 2:101-200 3:201-400 4:401-600 Over 600 add 1 fixture for each additional 300 males	Male 1:1-200 2:201-400 3:401-750 Over 750, add one fixture for each additional 500 persons Female 1:1-200 2:201-400 3:401-750		1 per 150 <sup>12</sup>
Office or Public Buildings - For employee use	Male 1:1-15 2:16-35 3:36-55 Over 55, add 1 fixture for each additional 40 persons Female <sup>14</sup> 1:1-15 3:16-35 4:36-55	Male 0:1-9 1:10-50 Add one fixture for each additional 50 males	Male 1 per 40 Female 1 per 40		
Penal Institutions For employee use	Male 1:1-15 2:16-35 3:36-55 Over 55, add 1 fixture for each additional 40 persons Female <sup>14</sup> 1:1-15 3:16-35 4:36-55	Male 0:1-9 1:10-50 Add one fixture for each additional 50 males	Male 1 per 40 Female 1 per 40		1 per 150 <sup>12</sup>
Penal Institutions For prison use Cell Exercise Room Exercise Area	1 per cell 1 per room 1 per 20	Male  1 per exercise room	1 per cell 1 per exercise room 1 per 20	1 per 16	1 per cell block floor 1 per exercise room Access to drinking fountain

<b>Type of Building or Occupancy<sup>2</sup></b>	<b>Water Closets (Fixtures per Person)</b>	<b>Urinals<sup>10</sup> (Fixtures per Person)</b>	<b>Lavatories (Fixtures per Person)</b>	<b>Bathtubs or Showers (Fixtures per Person)</b>	<b>Drinking Fountains<sup>3,13</sup> (Fixtures per Person)</b>
Agriculture Buildings Milking Barns Meat and Poultry Inspections Bldgs	At least 1 Male                      Female 1:1-15                      1:1-15 2:16-35                      2:16-35 3:36-55                      3:36-55 4:56-80                      4:56-80 1 for each additional 30 persons in excess of 80		At least 1		
Schools of Cosmetology	Male                      Female *At least 1              *At least 2 ----- *Per installation		At Least 1		
Cosmetological Establishments	* At least 1              At least 1 *Per installation				
Health Facilities and Clinics Waiting Room For Patient Use <sup>12</sup>  For Employee Use  Including Locker Room	Male                      Female  1 per room 1 per 6 patients   1:1-15                      1:1-15 2:16-35                      2:16-35 3:36-55                      3:36-55 Over 55 add 1 fixture for each additional 40 persons		Males                      Females  1 per 8 patients   1 per 40                      1 per 40	1 per 12 patients	1 per 75 <sup>12</sup>  1 per nursing unit



**TABLE 4-1: MINIMUM PLUMBING FACILITIES**

Each building shall be provided with sanitary facilities, including provisions for the physically handicapped as prescribed by the Department having jurisdiction. For requirements for the handicapped, ANSI A 117 1-1992, Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities may be used.

**Note:** ANSI A117 1-1992 is not adopted by the State of CALIFORNIA.

Each building shall be provided with sanitary facilities, including provisions for (HCD 1 & 2) persons with disabilities as prescribed by the Department having jurisdiction. [HCD 1] Covered multi-family dwellings minimum plumbing facilities required to be accessible to person with disabilities shall be provided in accordance with Chapter 15 of this Code and California Code of REGULATIONS, Title 24, Part 2, Chapter 11A [HCD 2]. Permanent mobile home park buildings and special occupancy park buildings required to be accessible by person with disabilities, shall be provided in accordance with Chapter 15 of this code and California Code of Regulations, Title 2, Part 2, Chapter 11B.

The total occupant load shall be determined by minimum exiting requirements. The minimum number of fixtures shall be calculated at fifty (50) percent male and fifty (50) percent female based on the total occupant load.

**Exception for HCD 1:** Minimum Plumbing Facilities; Limited Density Owner-built RURAL Dwellings. For limited density owner-built rural dwellings sanitary facilities, design and number of facilities as required and approved by the local health official shall be provided to the dwelling sites. It shall not be required that such facilities be located within the dwelling.

Each building shall be provided with sanitary facilities, including provisions for accessibility to person with disabilities as prescribed by the Department having jurisdiction, in the absence of such requirements, this Appendix, which provides a guideline for the minimum facilities for the various types of occupancies may be used.

The total occupant load shall be determined by minimum existing requirements. The minimum number of fixtures shall be calculated at fifty (50) percent male and fifty (50) percent female, based on the total occupant load.

<b>Type of Building or Occupancy<sup>2</sup></b>	<b>Water Closets<sup>14</sup> (Fixtures per Person)</b>	<b>Urinals<sup>5, 10</sup> (Fixtures per Person)</b>	<b>Lavatories (Fixtures per Person)</b>	<b>Bathtubs or Showers (Fixtures per Person)</b>	<b>Drinking Fountains<sup>3, 13</sup> (Fixtures per Person)</b>
Assembly Places - Theatres, Auditoriums, Convention Halls, etc. - for permanent employee use	Male                  Female <sup>14</sup> 1: 1-15                  1: 1-15 2: 16-35                  3: 16-35 3: 36-55                  4: 36-55 Over 55, add 1 fixture for each additional 40 persons.	Male 0: 1-9 1: 10-50  Add one fixture for each additional 50 males	Male                  Female 1 per 40                  1 per 40		
Assembly Places - Theatres, Auditoriums, Convention Halls, etc - for public use	Male                  Female <sup>14</sup> 1:1-100                  3:1-50 2:101-200                  4:51-100 3:201-400                  8:101-200 11:201-400 Over 400, add 1 fixture for each additional 500 males and one for each additional 125 females	1:1-100 2:101-200 3:201-400 4:401-600 Over 600 add 1 fixture for each additional 300 males	Male                  Female 1:1-200                  1:1-200 2:201-400                  2:201-400 3:401-750                  3:401-750 Over 750, add one fixture for each additional 500 persons		1: 1 – 150 2: 151 – 400 3: 401 – 750  Over 750, add one fixture for each additional 500 persons

Type of Building or Occupancy <sup>2</sup>	Water Closets (Fixtures per Person)	Urinals <sup>10</sup> (Fixtures per Person)	Lavatories (Fixtures per Person)	Bathtubs or Showers (Fixtures per Person)	Drinking Fountains <sup>3,13</sup> (Fixtures per Person)
Dormitories <sup>9</sup> School or Labor	Male Female <sup>14</sup> 1 per 10 1 per 8 Add 1 fixture for each additional 25 males (over 10) and 1 for each additional 20 females (over 8)	Male 1 per 25 Over 150, add 1 fixture for each additional 50 males	Male Female 1 per 12 1 per 12 Over 12 add one fixture for each additional 20 males and 1 for each 15 additional females	1 per 8 For females, add 1 bathtub per 30. Over 150, add 1 per 20	1 per 150 <sup>12</sup>
Dormitories for staff use	Male Female <sup>14</sup> 1:1-15 1:1-15 2:16-35 3:16-36 3:36-55 4:36-55 Over 55, add 1 fixture for each additional 40 persons	Male 1 per 50	Male Female 1 per 40 1 per 40	1 per 8	
Dwellings <sup>4</sup> Single Dwelling Multiple Dwelling or Apartment House	1 per dwelling 1 per dwelling or apartment unit		1 per dwelling 1 per dwelling or apartment unit	1 per dwelling 1 per dwelling or apartment unit	
Hospital Waiting rooms	1 per room		1 per room		1 per 150 <sup>12</sup>
Hospital for employee use	Male Female <sup>14</sup> 1::15 1:1-15 2:16-35 3:16-35 3:36-55 4:36-55 Over 55, add 1 fixture for each additional 40 persons	0:1-9 1:10-50  Add one fixture for each additional 50 males	Male Female 1 per 40 1 per 40		
Hospitals Individual Room Ward Room	1 per room 1 per 8 patients		1 per room 1 per 10 patients	1 per room 1 per 20 patients	1 per 150 <sup>12</sup>
Industrial <sup>6</sup> Warehouses Workshops, Foundries and similar establishments (for employee use)	Male Female 1:1-10 1:1-10 2:11-25 2:11-25 3:26-50 3:26-50 4:51-75 4:51-75 5:76-100 5:76-100 Over 100, add 1 fixture for each additional 30 persons		Up to 100, 1 per 10 persons  Over, 100, 1 per 15 persons <sup>7,8</sup>	1 shower for each 15 persons exposed to excessive heat or to skin contamination with poisonous, infectious, or irritating material	1 per 150 <sup>12</sup>

Type of Building or Occupancy <sup>2</sup>	Water Closets (Fixtures per Person)	Urinals <sup>10</sup> (Fixtures per Person)	Lavatories (Fixtures per Person)	Bathtubs or Showers (Fixtures per Person)	Drinking Fountains <sup>3,13</sup> (Fixtures per Person)
Institutional - Other than Hospitals or Penal Institutions (on each occupied floor)	Male 1 per 25 Female <sup>14</sup> 1 per 20	Male 0:1-9 1:10-50 Add one fixture for each additional 50 males	Male 1 per 10 Female 1 per 10	1 per 8	1 per 150 <sup>12</sup>
Institutional - Other than Hospitals or Penal Institutions (on each occupied floor) For employee use	Male 1:1-15 2:16-35 3:36-55 Over 55, add 1 fixture for each additional 40 persons	Male 0:1-9 1:10-50 Add one fixture for each additional 50 males	Male 1 per 40 Female 1 per 40	1 per 8	1 per 150 <sup>12</sup>
Office or Public Buildings	Male 1:1-100 2:101-200 3:201-400 Over 400, add one fixture for each additional 500 males and one for each additional 150 females	Female <sup>14</sup> 3:1-50 4:51-100 8:101-200 11:201-400	Male 1:1-200 2:201-400 3:401-750 Over 750, add one fixture for each additional 500 persons	Female 1:1-200 2:201-400 3:401-750	1 per 150 <sup>12</sup>
Office or Public Buildings - For employee use	Male 1:1-15 2:16-35 3:36-55 Over 55, add 1 fixture for each additional 40 persons	Female <sup>14</sup> 1:1-15 3:16-35 4:36-55	Male 0:1-9 1:10-50 Add one fixture for each additional 50 males	Female 1 per 40	
Penal Institutions For employee use	Male 1:1-15 2:16-35 3:36-55 Over 55, add 1 fixture for each additional 40 persons	Female <sup>14</sup> 1:1-15 3:16-35 4:36-55	Male 0:1-9 1:10-50 Add one fixture for each additional 50 males	Female 1 per 40	1 per 150 <sup>12</sup>
Penal Institutions For prison use Cell Exercise Room Exercise Area	1 per cell 1 per room 1 per 20	Male  1 per exercise room	1 per cell 1 per exercise room 1 per 20	1 per 16	1 per cell block floor 1 per exercise room Access to drinking fountain

<b>Type of Building or Occupancy<sup>2</sup></b>	<b>Water Closets (Fixtures per Person)</b>	<b>Urinals<sup>10</sup> (Fixtures per Person)</b>	<b>Lavatories (Fixtures per Person)</b>	<b>Bathtubs or Showers (Fixtures per Person)</b>	<b>Drinking Fountains<sup>3,13</sup> (Fixtures per Person)</b>
Agriculture Buildings Milking Barns Meat and Poultry Inspections Bldgs	At least 1 Male                      Female 1:1-15                      1:1-15 2:16-35                      2:16-35 3:36-55                      3:36-55 4:56-80                      4:56-80 1 for each additional 30 persons in excess of 80		At least 1		
Schools of Cosmetology	Male                      Female *At least 1              *At least 2 ----- *Per installation		At Least 1		
Cosmetological Establishments	* At least 1              At least 1 *Per installation				
Health Facilities and Clinics Waiting Room For Patient Use <sup>12</sup>  For Employee Use  Including Locker Room	Male                      Female  1 per room 1 per 6 patients  1:1-15                      1:1-15 2:16-35                      2:16-35 3:36-55                      3:36-55 Over 55 add 1 fixture for each additional 40 persons		Males                      Females  1 per 8 patients  1 per 40                      1 per 40	1 per 12 patients	1 per 75 <sup>12</sup>  1 per nursing unit

# **PART 8**

## **THE STATE HISTORICAL BUILDING CODE**

**(Chapter 6)**

## Chapter 6

# ALTERNATE ACCESSIBILITY PROVISIONS

### 601 PURPOSE, INTENT AND SCOPE

**601.1 Purpose.** The purpose of this chapter is to provide alternative regulations to facilitate access and use by people with disabilities to and throughout buildings or structures designated as qualified historical buildings or properties. These regulations require enforcing agencies to accept any reasonably equivalent alternatives to regular code when dealing with qualified historic buildings or properties.

**601.2 Intent.** It is the intent of this chapter to preserve the integrity of Qualified Historic Buildings and Properties while providing access to and use by people with disabilities.

**601.3 Scope.** These regulations shall apply to every Qualified Historical Building or Property that is required to provide access to people with disabilities.

### 602 BASIC PROVISIONS.

**602.1 Regular Code.** The Regular code for access for persons with disabilities shall be applied to Qualified Historical Buildings or Properties unless strict compliance with the regular code will threaten or destroy the historical significance or character defining features of the building or property.

**602.2 Alternative Provisions.** If the historical significance or character defining features are threatened, alternative provisions for access may be applied pursuant to this chapter provided the following conditions are met:

1. Such alternative provisions shall be applied only on an item-by-item or a case-by-case basis. (See Section 603).
2. The alternative provisions are applied according to the priorities outlined in Section 603 whereby the alternative providing the greatest accessibility is listed first.
3. Documentation is provided stating the reasons for the application of the alternative provisions. Such documentation shall be maintained as a part of the public record.
4. If it is found that the application of the preferred alternatives listed in Section 603 threaten the historical significance or character defining features, the provisions of Sections 604 and 605 may be applied.

**603 Preferred Alternatives.** The alternatives below each category are listed in order of priority. These alternatives apply only to the specific building standards listed below. All other related standards of regular code are not affected nor exempted.

**603.1 Entry.** These alternatives do not allow exceptions for the requirement of level landings in front of doors, except as provided in Section 603.3. Alternatives listed in order of priority are:

1. Access to any entrance used by the general public and no further than 200 feet (60960 mm) from the primary entrance.
2. Access at any entrance not used by the general public but open and unlocked with directional signs at the primary entrance and as close as possible to, but no further than 200 feet (60960 mm) from the primary entrance.

**603.2 Doors.** Alternatives listed in order of priority are:

1. Single leaf door which provides a minimum 30 inches (762 mm) of clear opening.
2. Single leaf door which provides a minimum 29 1/2 inches (749 mm) clear opening
3. Double door, one leaf of which provides a minimum 29 1/2 inches (749 mm) clear opening.
4. Double doors operable with a power-assist device to provide a minimum 29 1/2 inches (749 mm) clear opening when both doors are in the open position.

**603.3 Power-assisted Doors.** A power-assisted door or doors may be considered an equivalent alternative to level landings, strikeside clearance and door opening forces required by the regular code.

**603.4 Toilet Rooms.** In lieu of separate-gender toilet facilities as required in the regular code, an accessible unisex toilet facility may be designated.

**603.5 Exterior and Interior Ramps and Lifts.** Alternatives listed in order of priority are:

1. A lift or a ramp of greater than standard slope but no greater than 1:10, for horizontal distances not to exceed 12 feet (3658 mm). Signs shall be posted at upper and lower levels to indicate steepness of the slope.

2. Access by ramps of 1:6 slope for horizontal distance not to exceed 13 inches. Signs shall be posted at upper and lower levels to indicate steepness of the slope.
3. Access provided by experiences, services, functions, materials and resources through methods including, but not limited to, maps, plans, videos, virtual reality, and related equipment, at accessible levels. This alternative shall be documented as required in Section 605.

**604 Equivalent Facilitation.** Use of other designs and technologies, or deviation from particular technical and scoping requirements, are permitted if the application of the alternative provisions contained in Section 603 would threaten or destroy the historical significance or character defining features of the building or site or cause unreasonable hardship.

Alternatives to Section 604 are permitted only where the following conditions are met:

1. Such alternatives shall be applied only on an item-by-item or a case-by-case basis.
2. The alternative design and/or technologies used will provide substantially equivalent or greater accessibility to, and usability of, the facility.
3. The official charged with the enforcement of the standards shall document the reasons for the application of the alternative design and/or technologies and their effect on the historical significance or character defining features. Such documentation shall be in accordance with Section 602.2, Item 3, and shall include the opinions and comments of state or local accessibility officials, and the opinions and comments of representative local groups of people with disabilities. Such documentation shall be recorded and entered into the permanent file of the enforcing agency.

**605 Exceptions.** If the historical significance or character defining features would be threatened or destroyed by the application of alternative access standards as provided by this chapter, and no equivalent facilitation as provided in Section 604 is feasible, an exception from the literal requirements for full and equal access or any alternative provisions may be provided only if the following conditions are met:

1. such exception is considered only on an item by item or case by case basis.
2. interpretive exhibits and/or equal services of the exempted significant historical aspects are provided for the public in a location fully accessible to and usable by persons with disabilities, including people with hearing and sight impairment.



3. services are provided in an accessible location equal to those provided in the excepted location.
4. the official charged with the enforcement of the standards shall document the reasons for the application of the alternative design and/or technologies and their effect on the historical significance or character defining features. Such documentation shall be in accordance with Section 602.2, Item 3, and shall include the opinions and comments of state or local accessibility officials, and the opinions and comments of representative local groups of people with disabilities. Such documentation shall be recorded and entered into the permanent file of the enforcing agency.

# **PART 12**

## **THE CALIFORNIA REFERENCED STANDARDS CODE**

## **Chapter 31**

# **BUILDING AND FACILITY ACCESS SPECIFICATIONS**

### **DETECTABLE WARNINGS**

#### **SECTION 12-31-102**

“Nominal” means that pre-manufactured detectable warnings of devices used to create the detectable warning in place shall comply with required dimensions within + or - 0.020 inches for dome height, top diameter and bottom diameter and 0.050 inches for dome spacing.

<h1 style="text-align: center;">CALIFORNIA ACCESS COMPLIANCE REFERENCE MANUAL INDEX</h1>
--

## MAJOR SUBJECT INDEX

SUBJECT:	SECTION:	PAGE:
<b>A</b>		
Access Floor System (Definition)	202-A	14
Access for Group M Occupancies for publicly funded housing	1110B	87
Access for Group R Occupancies for publicly funded housing	1111B	91
Access to Employee Areas for publicly funded housing	1123B	121
Accessibility for Existing Buildings for publicly funded housing	1134B	144
Accessibility for Group A Occupancies for publicly funded housing	1104B	74
Accessibility for Group B Occupancies for publicly funded housing	1105B	80
Accessibility for Group E Occupancies for publicly funded housing	1106B	83
Accessibility for Group H Occupancies for publicly funded housing	1108B	85
Accessibility for Group I Occupancies for publicly funded housing	1109B	85
Accessibility for Group R Occupancies for publicly funded housing	1111B	91
Accessibility for Group S Occupancies for publicly funded housing	1112B	95
Accessibility for Group U Occupancies for publicly funded housing	1113B	95
Accessibility (Definition)	202-A	14
Accessible Element (Definition)	202-A	14
Accessible Location (Definition)	202-A	14
Accessible Parking Required for publicly funded housing	1129B	126
Accessible Space (Definition)	202-A	14
ACI (Definition)	202-A	14
Addition (Definition)	202-A	14
Adult (Definition)	202-A	14
Aerosol (Definition)	202-A	14
Aged Home or Institution (Definition)	202-A	14
Agricultural Building (Definition)	202-A	15
AISC (Definition)	202-A	15
Aisle (Definition)	202-A	15
Aisle, Employee Areas (Definition)	202-A	15
Alley (Definition)	202-A	15
Alter or Alteration (Definition)	202-A	15
Amendments to National Standards for the Uniform Building Code Standards (Part 1-General)	3505	157
Amusement Building (Definition)	202-A	15
ANSI (Definition)	202-A	15
Apartment House (Definition)	202-A	15

<b>SUBJECT:</b>	<b>SECTION:</b>	<b>PAGE:</b>
Application for Compliance Procedures	103	2
Application of standards for card readers at gasoline fuel dispensers	1102C	148
Application of Administration Code (Chpt 1, Part 5)	101.11	174
Approved (Definition)	202-A	15
Approved Agency (Definition)	202-A	16
Approved Fabricator (Definition)	202-A	16
Approved Listing Agency (Definition)	202-A	16
Approved Testing Agency (Definition)	202-A	16
Area (Definition)	202-A	16
Article 089-Administration		161
Article 210-Branch Circuits		169
Article 380-Switches		171
Article 760 Fire protective signaling systems		171
Assembly Building (Definition)	202-A	16
ASTM (Definition)	202-A	16
Atrium (Definition)	202-A	16
Attic Story (Definition)	202-A	16
Automatic (Definition)	202-A	17
Automatic Door (Definition)	202-A	17
<b>B</b>		
Balcony (Definition)	203-B	17
Basic Provisions for Alternate accessibility Provisions	602	181
Bathing and Toilet Facilities for publicly funded housing	1115B (Figure 11B-1C)	99
Bathtubs	1506.0	178
Billing for Further Fees for compliance procedures	107	5
Building (Definition)	203-B	17
Building Accessibility for privately funded housing	1103A	40
Building Accessibility for publicly funded housing	1103B	74
Building, Existing (Definition)	203-B	17
Building Official (Definition)	203-B	17
<b>C</b>		
C.C.R. (Definition)	204 -C	17
Card Reader Devices at Fuel Dispensers	1101C	148
Circulation Path (Definition)	204 -C	17
Closed-Circuit Telephone (Definition)	204 -C	18
Commerce (Definition)	204 -C	18
Commercial Facilities (Definition)	204 -C	18
Common Use (Definition)	204 -C	18
Condominium, Residential (Definition)	204-C	18
Congregate Residence (Definition)	204-C	18
Cross Slope (Definition)	204 -C	18
Curb Cut (Definition)	204 -C	18
Curb Ramp (Definition)	204 -C	18

**D**

Definitions for housing accessibility for privately funded housing	1102A	35
Definitions for publicly funded housing	1102B	72
Design and Construction for privately funded housing	1107A	40
Detectable Warning (Definition)	205-D	18
Detectable Warnings for building and Facility access specifications (Chpt 31)	12-31-102	185
Directional Sign (Definition)	205-D	19
Disability (Definition)	205-D	19
Disabled (Definition)	205-D	19
Door Signal Devices for privately funded housing	1106A	40
Dormitory (Definition)	205-D	19
Drinking Fountains	1507.0	178
Dwelling Unit (Definition)	205-D	19

**E**

Effective Date of administration code (Chpt 1, Part 2)	101.4	9
Egress and Areas of Refuge for privately funded housing	1108A	43
Elevator, Passenger (Definition)	206-E	19
Elevators and Special Access (Wheelchair) Lifts for privately funded housing	1110A	49
Elevators and Special Access (Wheelchair) Lifts for publicly funded housing	1116B	108
Enforcing Agency (Definition)	206-E	19
Entrance (Definition)	206-E	19
Equivalent Facilitation for alternate accessibility provisions	604	183
Equivalent Facilitation (Definition)	206-E	19
Exceptions for alternate accessibility provisions	605	183
Exit (Definition)	206-E	19
Existing Buildings (Definition)	206-E	19
Exterior Routes of Travel for privately funded housing	1117A	53
Exterior Routes of Travel for publicly funded housing	1127B	122

**F**

Facility (or facilities) (Definition)	207-F	20
Facility Accessibility for privately funded housing	1109A	44
Facility Accessibility for publicly funded housing	1114B	95
Factories and Warehouses for publicly funded accommodations	1107B	84
Fees for compliance procedures	104	3
Fixed or Built-In Seating, Tables and counters for publicly funded housing	1122B	120
Flooring for privately funded housing	1116A	53
Floors and Levels for publicly funded housing	1120B	119
Floor Level at doors for means of egress	1003.3.1.6a	32
Format of Administration Code (Chpt 1, Part 5)	101.8	174

## G

General Accessibility for Entrances, Exits and paths of travel for publicly funded housing	1133B	131
General Accessibility for Entrances, Exits and paths of travel for privately funded housing	1120A	61
General Plumbing Requirements for design safety for accessibility	1501.0	175
General Requirements for compliance procedures	111	8
Grab bar (Definition)	208-G	20
Ground and Floor Surfaces for publicly funded housing	1124B	121
Group M Occupancies for privately funded housing	1104A	40
Group R Occupancies for privately funded housing	1105A	40
Guardrail (Definition)	208-G	20

## H

Handrails for means of egress	1003.3.3.6a	34
Health Care Provider (Definition)	209-H	20
Historic Preservation-Special Standards of accessibility for Buildings with historical significance	1135B	147
Historical Building (Definition)	209-H	20
Hotel (Definition)	209-H	20

## I

International Symbol of Accessibility (Definition)	210-I	20
--	-------	----

## J

Jurisdiction (Definition)	211-J	20
---------------------------	-------	----

## K

Kick Plate (Definition)	212-K	21
Kitchens for privately funded housing	1112A	51

## L

Landings for means of egress	1003.3.4.4	34
Laundry Rooms for privately funded housing	1115A	53
Lavatories	1504.0	176
Level Area (Definition)	213-L	21
Lift, Special Access (Definition)	213-L	21
Living Accommodations (Definition)	213-L	21

## M

Marked Crossing (Definition)	214-M	21
Motel (Definition)	214-M	21
Multiple-Accommodation Toilet Facility	214-M	21

**N**

Nonbuilding Regulations on administrative code (Chpt 1, Part 2)	101.8	10
Nonbuilding Regulations on administrative code (Chpt 1, Part 5)	101.6	173
Number of Accessible Card-Reading devices Required	1103C	149

**O**

Order of Precedence of administration Code (Chapter 1, Part 2)	101.9	10
Order of Precedence of administration Code (Chapter 1, Part 5)	101.7	173
Occupancy classified for use or occupancy	301	30
Occupiable (Definition)	216-O	21
Operable Part (Definition)	216-O	21
Other Building Components for publicly funded housing	1117B	109
Outdoor Occupancies for publicly funded housing	1132B	130

**P**

Passage Door (Definition)	217-P	22
Passenger Elevator (Definition)	217-P	22
Path of Travel (Definition)	217-P	22
Pedestrian (Definition)	217-P	22
Pedestrian Grade Separation (Definition)	217-P	22
Pedestrian Ramp (Definition)	217-P	22
Pedestrian Walkway (Definition)	217-P	22
Pedestrian Way (Definition)	217-P	22
Permanent (Definition)	217-P	22
Permit (Definition)	217-P	22
Platform, Unenclosed (Definition)	217-P	22
Power –Assisted Door (Definition)	217-P	23
Preferred alternatives for alternate accessibility provisions	603	182
Primary Entrance (Definition)	217-P	23
Privately Funded (Definition)	217-P	23
Parking Structures for publicly funded housing	1130B	129
Passenger Drop-Off and Loading Zones for publicly funded housing	1131B	129
Pedestrian Grade Separations (Overpasses And underpasses) for publicly funded housing	1128B	125
Protruding Objects for publicly funded housing	1121B	120
Parking Facilities for privately funded housing	1118A	55
Project Cost for compliance procedures	105	4
Protection of Dispensers Mounted At Grade	1105C	149
Public accommodation (Definition)	217-P	23
Public Use (Definition)	217-P	24
Public Funded Construction	217-P	25
Public Way (Definition)	217-P	25



Purpose, Intent and Scope of Alternate Accessibility Provisions	601	181
Purpose of Compliance Procedures for access to public buildings by people with disabilities	101	1
Purpose of Administration code (Chapter 1, part 5)	101.2	172

## Q

Qualified Historical Building (or structure) (Definition)	218-Q	25
---	-------	----

## R

Rail Transit Boarding Platform (Definition)	219-R	25
Ramp (Definition)	219-R	25
Reasonable Portion (Definition)	219-R	25
Recommend (Definition)	219-R	25
Remodeling (Definition)	219-R	25
Repair (Definition)	219-R	25
Riser (Definition)	219-R	25
Running Slope (Definition)	219-R	25
Refunds for compliance procedures	108	6
Required Features for card readers at fuel dispensers	1104C (Figs 11C-1 & 11C-2)	149
Required handrails for means of egress	1003.3.3.6.1a	34
Requirements for Group R Occupancies for use or occupancy	310	30
Requirements for Group S Occupancies for use or occupancy	311	30
Review of Plans and Specifications for compliance procedures	109	6
Revision of Plans and Specifications for compliance procedures	106	5
Requirements for Accessible Routes in Covered buildings without an Elevator	1119A	59

## S

Scope of administration code (Chapter 1, Part 5)	101.4	169
Scope of Accessibility to Public Buildings, public Accommodations, Commercial buildings and Publicly Funded Housing	1101B	72
Scope of Housing Accessibility for privately funded housing	1101A	35
Sanitary Facility (Definition)	220-S	26
Shopping Center (Definition)	220-S	26
Should (Definition)	220-S	26
Sidewalk (Definition)	220-S	26
Signage(Definition)	220-S	26
Single-Accommodation Sanitary Facility(Definition)	220-S	26
Site (Definition)	220-S	26
Site Development (Definition)	220-S	26
Sleeping Accommodations (Definition)	220-S	26
Space (Definition)	220-S	26
Special Access Lift (Definition)	220-S	26

Space Allowance and Reach Ranges	1118B	118
Special Standards of Accessibility For Buildings with Historical Significance	1119B	119
Stairway (Definition)	220-S	26
Standard Reference Documents for Administration Code (Chapter 1, Part 5)	101.10	174
Story (Definition)	220-S	27
Structure (Definition)	220-S	27
Storage for publicly funded housing	1125B	122
Signs for privately funded housing	1114A	52
Swimming Pools for privately funded housing	1113A	52
Showers	1505.0	177
Sinks	1508.0	180
Special Elevators	3008	153
Special Provisions for elevators, dumbwaiters, escalators and moving walks	3003	150

## T

Tactile (Definition)	221-T	27
Technically Infeasible (Definition)	221-T	27
Temporary (Definition)	221-T	27
Text Telephone (Definition)	221-T	27
Title, Purpose and Scope on administration code (Chapter 1, Part 2)	101	9
Transient Lodging (Definition)	221-T	27
Tread (Definition)	221-T	27
Telephones for privately funded housing	1111A	49
Thresholds on means of egress	1003.3.1.6.1a	32
Type of lock or latch for means of egress	1003.3.1.8	33

## U

UBC (Definition)	222-U	28
Unreasonable Hardship (Definition)	222-U	28
Urinals	1503.0	176

## V

Validity of Administration code (Chpt 1, Part 5)	101.9	174
Vehicular Way (Definition)	223-V	28
Vending Machines for publicly funded housing	1126B	122

## W

Walk (Definition)	224-W	28
Wheelchair (Definition)	224-W	28
Wheelchair occupant or wheelchair user (Definition)	224-W	29
Width and height of door size for means of egress	1003.3.1.3a	32
Working Level or Working Area (Definition)	224-W	29
Work station (Definition)	224-W	29
Water Closets	1502.0	175
Written Approval for compliance procedures	110	6